

A  
GRAMMAR  
OF  
ARABIC LANGUAGE



A  
GRAMMAR  
OF  
ARABIC LANGUAGE

INTENDED FOR  
*STUDENTS OF THE UNIVERSITIES IN INDIA*  
TO WHICH IS APPENDED  
AN ESSAY ON THE ARABIC LANGUAGE  
AND LITERATURE

BY  
*Bahr-ul-Uloom*  
MAULANA OBAIDULLAH-EL-OBAIDI SUHRAWARDY

NEW EDITION

PUBLISHED BY THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALCUTTA

1938

PRINTED IN INDIA

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY BHUPENDRALAL BANERJEE  
AT THE CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY PRESS, SENATE HOUSE, CALCUTTA.

Reg. No. 1073B.—December, 1938.—B



DEDICATED

TO

W. S. ATKINSON, Esq., M.A.,  
*Director of Public Instruction, Bengal.*



## FOREWORD

Sir Asutosh Mookerjee had entrusted my brother, Sir Abdullah Suhrawardy, with the task of preparing a revised edition of the present book. My brother's unexpected and untimely death left this work unfinished. I have taken on myself the duty of publishing this grammar which, since 1865, has formed the basis of instruction in Arabic, not only in Bengal but throughout India. I have been encouraged in taking up this work because of the appreciation received from scholars outside India, such as His Excellency Ali Ibrahim Pasha, Vice-Chancellor of the University of Cairo, and the Sheikh-al-Azhar.

Through the courtesy of my successor and friend, Dr. Syamaprasad Mookerjee, M.A., D.Litt., Vice-Chancellor, the Calcutta University has undertaken to print this book.

I take this opportunity of thanking the following gentlemen for the assistance they have kindly rendered: Shams-ul-Ulema Mohammed Musa, Khan Bahadur, Principal, Calcutta Madrassah; Dr. M. Zubair Siddiqui, Professor, Islamic Studies, University of Calcutta; Moulvi Fazlur Rahman Baqui, Lecturer, Post-Graduate Department, University of Calcutta; Moulvi Abdul Karim, and Mr. Bhupendralal Banerjee of the Calcutta University Press.

'KASHANA'  
3, Suhrawardy Avenue,  
Park Circus, Calcutta  
Dec. 1938

HASSAN SUHRAWARDY



## PREFACE

### TO THE FIRST EDITION

On my being elected in 1865 to the chair of Professor of Arabic in the Hugli College, I found that the want of an Arabic elementary grammar was greatly felt by the Arabic students of the Calcutta University. Acting therefore under the advice of Mr. Thwaytes, Principal of the College, I determined to compile such a grammar as I thought was needed in the Urdu language and modelled it on the concise and simple plan of European grammars. That little work, along with my Arabic Primer and First and Second Readers, has been extensively used and, I believe, has greatly facilitated the acquirement of Arabic in this country, especially by the Undergraduates of the Calcutta University. Encouraged by the success of the above compilation, I have been induced to publish an Arabic Grammar in English, the language in which the University Examinations are conducted.

The few Arabic Grammars in English published in this country, such as Lumsden's Arabic Grammar and the English translations of the *Miat Amil* and *Hidayatunnahw*, besides being out of print, are incomplete and recondite, being entirely based on the indigenous oriental plan. Among the Anglo-Arabic grammars which have appeared in Europe and are available in this country, are those by Forbes and Wright. The former lacks many things which are held necessary for a complete knowledge of Arabic in India. The latter, although most comprehensive and complete,

is yet based too exclusively on the European method, and contains too large an amount of comparative Philology, with numerous Latin terms and phrases, to be useful to the Indian student. These considerations made me feel the need of a book such as this.

In compiling this humble work, I have adopted a method which partakes of both the European and the oriental scheme and thus have tried to render the book well adapted to the capacities of Indian students.

I have to acknowledge my great obligations to Mr. Thwaytes, for the encouragement he has always given me and the deep interest he has invariably taken in the compilation of my works. He has, moreover, been good enough to attract the notice of Mr. Atkinson, Director of Public Instruction in Bengal, to this work and has obtained for me his patronage.

I must also express my sense of gratitude to Mr. Blochmann for his kindly appreciation of the usefulness of this little work after examining its draft in manuscript, and for his recommendation of it, as worthy of support, to the Director. Mr. Blochmann also most generously offered me his valuable assistance in correcting the proof-sheets; but I regret that pressure of business prevented his looking over more than a small portion of them. Agreeable to the suggestion of the above-named gentleman, I have, at the end of the book, appended an essay\* on the Arabic Language and Literature, which I hope may be useful to students. The introductory part of the essay was once published in the Calcutta Review with some philological notes by the Editor.

---

\* In this edition this essay has been placed at the beginning of the book.

I am sorry to have to notice the delay which has taken place in the publication of this work ; it was complete in manuscript and committed to the Press four years ago. The cause of the tardiness has been the extreme difficulty of accurately placing the vowel points, the types of which, being unlike those in Europe, separate from the main types, frequently get shifted. Besides this, another difficulty has arisen in the printing of the book, owing to its being written in Anglo-Arabic. The English compositor does not know Arabic, and the Arabic compositor does not know English, a fact which has caused much confusion and delay.

Hence, also, some misprints have arisen in the book, which I have endeavoured to rectify in the list of errata.

In conclusion, my best thanks are due to Mr. Atkinson for the kindness he has shewn in assisting me with funds for the publication of this Grammar ; and it is to him that I have the honour, to dedicate my work.

*Chinsurah*, 1873

OBAIDULLAH





# C O N T E N T S

	<i>Page</i>
An Essay on the Arabic Language and Literature...	1

## Part I—ORTHOGRAPHY

The Letters	...	...	...	41
The use of Hamzah	...	...	...	44
Classification of the Letters	...	...	...	45

## Part II—ETYMOLOGY

Parts of Speech	...	...	47
Verbs	...	...	48
Preterite	...	...	49
Preterite Active	...	...	50
Preterite of the Passive Voice	...	...	50
Aorist	...	...	51
Imperative	...	...	57
Participles	...	...	58
Classification of Verbs according to the number of			
Radical			
Letters	...	...	59
Primitive Triliteral	...	...	61

			<i>Page</i>
Primitive Quadriliteral	...	...	65
Derivative Triliteral	...	...	65
Derivative Quadriliteral	...	...	72
General significations and peculiarities of the Primitive			
Triliteral forms	...	...	74
General significations and peculiarities of the Derivative			
Triliteral forms	...	...	76
General significations and peculiarities of the Primitive			
and Derivative Quadriliteral Verbs		...	85
Irregular Verbs	...	...	86
Infirm or Imperfect Verbs	...	...	87
Simile ( مثال )	...	...	87
Concave Verbs ( اجوف )	...	...	89
Derivative forms of the Concave Verbs		...	101
Defective Verbs ( ناقص )	...	...	103
Derivative forms of the Defective Verbs		...	115
Involute ( لفيف )	...	...	118
Hamzated Verbs ( مهموز )	...	...	119
Verbs ( مضاعف )	...	...	123
Derivative forms of the Surd Verbs		...	125
Negative Verbs ( ليس )	...	...	126
Verbs of Praise and Censure ( افعال المدح و الذم )			127
Verbs of Admiration or Wonder ( افعال التعجب )			127

## NOUNS

	<i>Page</i>
Primitive Nouns ... ..	128
Infinitive or Verbal Nouns ... ..	129
Derivative Nouns ... ..	133
The Participles, active and passive, or the Nouns of the agent and the object ... ..	134
The Simple Attributives or Verbal Adjectives	135
Adjectives with intensive significations, otherwise called Nouns of Intensity ( اسم المبالغة ) ...	138
Adjectives in the Comparative and Superlative degrees, otherwise called Nouns of Superiority ( اسم التفضيل )	139
Nouns of Time and Place ( اسم الزمان والمكان or اسم الظرف )	141
Nouns of Instrument ( اسم الآلة ) ...	143
Relative Adjectives ( الاسماء المنسوبة ) ...	144
The formation of the Diminutive Noun ( التصغير )	151
Numbers ... ..	156
Regular Plurals ( الجمع السالم ) ... ..	158
Irregular Plurals ( الجمع المكسر ) ... ..	161
The Plural of Multitude ... ..	165
The Plurals of Plurals ( جمع المجموع ) ... ..	172
Irregular formation of the Plural ... ..	177
The Gender of Nouns ... ..	178
Defined and undefined Nouns ... ..	180
Article ... ..	180

	<i>Page</i>
The Cases of Nouns ... ..	181
Declension of the <i>gahir-ul-munsarif</i> ( غبر المنصرف ) ...	187
Personal Pronouns ( ضمائر ) ... ..	188
The Affixed Pronouns ( ضمائر متصل ) ... ..	189
Demonstrative Pronouns ( اسماء اشارة ) ... ..	191
Relative Pronouns ... ..	192
Distributive Pronouns ... ..	193

#### THE NUMERALS

Cardinal Numbers ... ..	193
Ordinal Numbers ... ..	196
Fractional Numbers ... ..	197
Distributive Numbers ... ..	198

#### PARTICLES

Prepositions ... ..	198
Adverbs ... ..	204
Conjunctions ... ..	208
Interjections ... ..	211

#### APPENDIX

Rules of Permutation ... ..	213
-----------------------------	-----

#### Part III—SYNTAX

Verbal Sentence ( جملة فعلية ) ... ..	220
---------------------------------------	-----

	<i>Page</i>
Nominal Sentence ... ..	222
Local Sentence ... ..	224
Conditional Sentence ... ..	224
Governing Powers ... ..	225
Analogous Governing Powers ( القياسي ) ... ..	226
Absolute Governing Powers ( المعنوي ) ... ..	226
Verbal Governing Powers ( اللفظي ) ... ..	226
Finite Verbs in general ... ..	226
Objective Complements ... ..	227
Absolute Objective ( المفعول المطلق ) ... ..	227
Objective Proper ( المفعول به ) ... ..	228
Locative or Temporal Object ( المفعول فيه ) ... ..	228
Causative Object ( المفعول له ) ... ..	229
Associative Object ( المفعول معه ) ... ..	230
Adverbial Complements ... ..	230
Circumstantial Adverb ( الحال ) ... ..	230
Specificative Adverb ( التمييز ) ... ..	231
Active Participle ( مشبه بالفعل ) ... ..	232
Passive Participle ... ..	232
Simple Attributive Adjective ... ..	233
Infinitive ... ..	233
Noun which governs another in the Genitive	
( اسم المضاف ) ... ..	233
Perfect or Complete Noun ( الاسم التام ) ... ..	234

## THE PRESCRIPTIVE GOVERNING

POWERS (العوامل السماعية)		Page
1st Class <i>Incomplete Verbs</i> (الأفعال الناقصة)	...	285
2nd Class <i>Verbs of Proximity</i> (أفعال المقاربة)	...	288
3rd Class <i>Verbs of praise and censure</i> (أفعال المدح والذم)	...	289
4th Class <i>Verbs of the mind</i> (أفعال القلوب)	...	240
5th Class <i>Nouns of Verb</i> (أسماء الأفعال)	...	242
6th Class <i>quiescent marks</i> (اسم نكرة جوازم المضارع)	...	248
7th Class <i>undefined nouns</i> (اسم نكرة)	...	244
8th Class <i>Particles</i> (حروف الجر)	...	247
9th Class preceding a nominal sentence (أن - أن) etc	...	247
10th Class <i>Negative Particles</i> (مأولا)	...	248
11th Class (فواصب المضارع)	...	249
12th Class <i>uses</i> (ان - من - كي - افن)	...	252
13th Class (جوازم المضارع)	...	254
The <i>Appositives</i> (التوابع)	...	255
The <i>Corroboration</i> (التأكيد)	...	256
The <i>Permutation</i> (البدل)	...	256
Connection by <i>Conjunctions</i> (العطف بالحروف)	...	257
<i>Explicative Apposition</i> (عطف البيان)	...	257
<i>Pronouns</i>	...	257

## SUPPLEMENT

The <i>Tenses</i>	...	260
The <i>Moods</i>	...	261

THE  
GRAMMAR  
OF  
ARABIC LANGUAGE

---

AN ESSAY ON THE ARABIC LANGUAGE AND  
LITERATURE.

The Arabic belongs to the Semitic family of languages, distinguished by the triliteral root. The chief cognate languages are the Hebrew, the Syriac, the Chaldaic, the Ethiopic, and the Phœnician. Of this family, the Arabic may fairly be considered the head ; it is, in a way, the type and ground-form of all the Semitic languages. Its grammar is philosophically digested and well methodised. Its literature is highly cultivated and vastly developed. The copiousness of its vocabulary, perhaps unrivalled amongst the languages of the world, deserves our highest attention.

In one direction, the exceeding richness of the Arabic language becomes so exuberant as to approach redundancy. It possesses multitudes of words to express the same thing ; which

point may be best illustrated by the fact that it offers a choice of a thousand words for 'camel,' about the same number for 'horse,' and about five hundred words each for 'sword' and 'tiger.' But the most valuable result of its copiousness is to be looked for in the fact that it possesses words expressive of the most minute differences of shades of meaning, in many cases where these distinctions do not admit of being indicated in any other language except by a long and obscure periphrasis. There is an admirable work by Tha'álabi, entitled *Fiqhul-Lughat* or *the Philosophy of the Lexicon*, otherwise called *Asrárul-'Arabia* or *the Mysteries of the Arabic*, which contains many illustrations of this assertion, and from which we will cull a few examples. The learned writer points out a curious series of nouns which indicate the *beginning* or the *first part* of various things. Thus:—

تَبَاشِير	( <i>Tabáshir</i> )	means the beginning of morning or dawn.
غَسَق	( <i>Ghasaq</i> )	„ first part of the night.
وَسْمِي	( <i>Wasmi</i> )	„ first droppings of a shower of rain of spring.
لَبَأ	( <i>Leba</i> )	„ the milk milked first.
سَلَف	( <i>Suláf</i> )	„ the wine got from the first squeeze of the grapes.
بَاكُورَة	( <i>Bákúrah</i> )	„ first fruit of a tree or garden.
بَكْر	( <i>Bikr</i> )	„ the first child of a man.
نَهْل	( <i>Nahl</i> )	„ the first drink of water.



نشوة	( <i>Nashwah</i> )	means the first state of intoxication.
وخت	( <i>Wakht</i> )	„ the first state of growing grey or becoming hoary-headed.
نعاس	( <i>Nu'ás</i> )	„ the first attack of sleep.
استهلال	( <i>Istihlál</i> )	„ the sound uttered by a new-born child.
طليعة	( <i>Tali'ah</i> )	„ the first portion of an army or the van.
عنقوان	( <i>'Unfurán</i> )	} „ the first state of youth or blooming.
ربعان	( <i>Rai'án</i> )	
علواء	( <i>Ghulawá</i> )	
روق	( <i>Rauq</i> )	
مبيعة	( <i>Mai'ah</i> )	}

Again, there is to be found a class of nouns implying the same thing in its different conditions. For instance, when the saliva is in the mouth, it is called رصاب *Rudáb* ; but when it is ejected, it is called بزاق *Buzáq*. When fuel is burning, it is called وقود *Waqúd* ; otherwise حطب *Haṭab*. The sun when rising is called غرالة *Ghazálah* ; at other times شمس *Shams*. Again, there may be found a large number of *pairs* of words, one member of each pair being applied to an object when **large**, the other member to the same object when **small**. For in stance :—

A large tree is called شجر *Shajar* ; a small one فسل *Fasil*.

A „ date-tree „ نخل *Nakhl* ; „ „ أشاء *Ashá*.

A large bird	is called	(طير) <i>Tair</i> ;	a small one	دخل <i>Dukhkhāl</i> .
A ,, ant	,,	(نمل) <i>Naml</i> ;	,,	ذر <i>Dharr</i> .
A ,, feather	,,	(ريش) <i>Rish</i> ;	,,	زغب <i>Zughab</i> .
A ,, rivulet	,,	(نهر) <i>Nahar</i> ;	,,	جدول <i>Jadwāl</i> .
A ,, hillock	,,	(جبل) <i>Jabal</i> ;	,,	قرن <i>Qarn</i> .
A ,, boat	,,	(سفينة) <i>Safinah</i> ;	,,	قارب <i>Qarib</i> .

Again, there are many words signifying various degrees of fatness in women ; for instance, when a woman is moderately bulky with a fair proportion in her limbs, or delicacy, she is called رباحلة *Rebahlah* ; when she is increased in bulk, but not to the degree of ugliness, she is called سباحلة *Sebahlah* ; but if the bulkiness has rendered her ugly or awkward, she is مفاضة *Mufāḍah* ; and when she is stupendously huge, with protuberant and pendant fat, she is then عفاج *'Ifḍāj*. So there are words indicating degrees of fatness in men also ; a man is first لحييم *Lāhim*, then شعيم *Shahim*, then بلندح *Balandah*, and then عكوك *Akkūk*.

There are again various words signifying various degrees of height and shortness in the size of man. For instance, when a man is moderately tall, he is called طويل *Tawīl*, and then طوال *Tuwāl* ; but when he becomes *too* tall, he is then called شونب *Shauḥab*, or شوقب *Shauqab*. Again, when he exceeds the latter degree also, he is called عشط *Ashannat* or عشق *Ashannaq* ; and lastly, when the tallness in a man reaches the highest degree, he is then called عنطط *'Anatnat*. And so in the degree of shortness, a dwarfish man is called دحداح *Dahdah*,

then حنبل *Hanbal*, then حزنبل *Hazanbal*, then حنزاب *Hinzáb* or كهس *Kahmas*, then بعتر *Buhtur* or حبتار *Habtar*. But when a man is so dwarfish that when he sits among his companions he is almost invisible, he is then حنتار *Hintar* or حندل *Handal*. Finally, when he is so short that his standing up does not increase his height, he is then حنزقرة *Hinzagrat*.

There are multitudes of words showing the different degrees of bravery and timidity. For instance, a timid man in the lowest degree is called جبان *Jabán*; then هبابة *Hayyábah*; then مفؤود *Mafúud*; then ورع or ضرع *Wara' or Dara'*; then هاعلاع *Há'lá'*. So a brave man is called شجاع *Shujá'*; then بطل *Baṭal*; then صمة *Šimmah*; then ذمر *Dhamir*; then حلبس *Halbas*; then اھیس *Ahyas*, or اليس *Alyas*; then نكل *Nikl*; then نهيك *Nahik*; then معرب *Mihrah*; and lastly عشمشم *Ghashamsham* or اھم *Aiham*.

There are different names for different kinds of wealth or property. An inherited property is called تلال *Tilád*, تاليد *Tálid* or تليد *Talid*; an acquired one is called مستطرف *Mustatraf*, طارف *Tárif*, طريف *Tarif* or مطرف *Mutarraf*; wealth buried under the ground is ركاز *Rikáz*; and when the same is not expected to be recovered, it is then ضمار *Dimár*. When it is in gold or silver, it is called صامت *Sámit* or "mute;" and when it is in cattle, sheep, camels, etc., it is then ناطق *Nátig* or "speaking." When the same is immovable, yielding hire or rent, it is called عقار *Aqár*.

There are words implying different degrees of poverty as well as of riches. A man is مفلس *Muflis*; then معدم *Mu'dim*; then ملق *Mumliq*; then مدقع *Mudqi'*; then مسكين *Miskin*; and lastly فقير *Faqir*. On the other hand, the lowest degree of richness is indicated by كفاف *Kafáf*; then غنى *Ghiná*; then ثروة *Tharwat*; then اكثار *Ikthár*; then اتراب *Itráb*; and lastly قنطرة *Qanṭarah*.

There are distinct words implying a human being in his different stages of age. For instance, a child when in the womb is called جنين *Janin*; when he is born, he is then called وليد *Walid*; when sucking, he is called رضيع *Raḍi'*; when weaned, he is فطيم *Faṭim*; when he is able to walk, he is called دارج *Dárij*; when he is in length about five spans, he is then خماسي *Khumási*. Again, when his first teeth are shed, he is called مثغور *Mathghúr*; and when again his new teeth have appeared, he is مuththaghír. When he is above 10 years, he is متزعر *Mutara'ri'* or ناشئ *Náshi*; and when he is approaching the age of puberty, he is مرأهق *Muráhig* or يافع *Yáfi*. But during all these conditions, he is called by the general denomination غلام *Ghulám* or boy. Again, when he is a perfectly developed young man, he is called فتى *Fáta* or شارخ *Shárikh*; but when he reaches the highest degree of blooming youth, he is then مجتمع *Mujtami'*; afterward, when his age is between 30 and 40, he is called شاب *Shább*. Then from that age up to 60 he is كهل *Kahl*. Then he is شيخ *Shaikh*; then كبير *Kabír*;

then **هرم** *Harim*; and finally **خرف** *Kharif*, which is Shakespeare's

...Second childishness and mere oblivion,  
Sans teeth, sans eyes, sans taste, sans everything.

On the other hand, the female is first **طفلة** *Taflah*, when she is an infant; and then **وليدة** *Valida*; then **كأب** *Ká'ib*; then **نأيد** *Náhid*; then **عانس** *A'nis*; then **خود** *Khaud*, when she has reached the middle of her youth; she is **مسلف** *Muslif* when she is above forty; and then **شهلة** *Shahla* or **كهلة** *Kahla*; then **شهبرة** *Shahbarah*; then **حيزبون** *Haizabún*; and lastly **قلم** *Qal'am*.

Again, there are words indicating different degrees of beauty in woman. For instance, a beautiful woman is called **جميلة** *Jamilah* or **وضيئة** *Wadi'ah*; but when she is so beautiful that she is independent of ornament on account of her natural beauty, she is called **غانية** *Ghániah*. Again, when she, being extremely handsome, is very indifferent about dress and other artificial decorations, then she is **معطل** *Mi'tál*; when her beauty is constant, she is **وسيمة** *Wasimah*; and again, when she is blessed with abundance of beauty, she is **قسيمة** *Qasimah*; and lastly, when her beauty is absolutely transcendent, she is called **روعاء** *Raw'á*. Moreover, there are distinct or separate words for the beauties in different parts of the human body, which would have delighted Homer as epithets for his deities and heroes.

Again, there are different words for the sewing of different things. For instance, *خاط* *Khāṭa* denotes sewing of clothes ; while *خرز* *Kharaza* implies sewing of stockings; *خصف* *Khaṣafa* denotes sewing of shoes; *كتب* *Kataba* that of water-skins; and *حاص* *Haṣa* sewing leather or the eyes of the hawk.

We have now said enough to prove the extraordinary delicacy of the Arabic language, and the singularly minute differences of meaning which can be indicated therein by the change of a single word. To the student who wishes to pursue the subject, we would recommend the perusal of the work mentioned above, and also of the *Fiqhul Lughat* by Ibn Fāris Abul Husain Aḥamadul Qazwīnī (d. 395 A.H.).

A most striking proof of the copiousness of the Arabic language is to be found in the fact, that most words of this most philosophical language are such that all words formed therefrom by *permutation* (i.e., all possible arrangements of the radical letters) are significant. For instance, the word *قلب* *qalb*, meaning *heart*, has three radical letters. By *permutation* there can be formed other five words, each of them being significant, viz.,

*بقل* *Baql*, “herb.”

*بلق* *Balaq*, “of a black and white colour.”

*لقب* *Lakqab*, “appellation.”

*قبل* *Qabl*, “before.”

*لبق* *Labaq*, “talkativeness.”

In clearness and simplicity of construction, the Arabic compares favourably with most other languages ; it clearly excels, we believe, most languages of the Aryan stock in these respects. One thing that conduces much to this end is its possession of certain fixed models called *Bābs*, by which multitudes of verbs of various roots are moulded into the same general form. The conjugation of the Arabic verb is highly inflectional ; differing herein from the Persian, and forms the modern form of the English and of most of the other Aryan tongues. Hence the Arabic, unlike those languages, forms generally the verbs of different tenses, moods, and voices simply by a modification of vowels, while in those languages separate verbs of different roots are required to adjoin for the same purpose. Pronouns too are often implied in the verbs ; hence a sentence may be formed simply by a verb ; thus *qatala* (قتل) is equivalent to *huwa qatala* (هو قتل) ‘he killed.’ Besides, a complete sentence may be formed simply with two nouns, one being the subject and the other the predicate, without the intervention of the copula (which, in fact, this language does not possess). These peculiarities of construction give the Arabic that clearness coupled with conciseness, which is observable (though not, we think, to the same extent) in the classical languages of the Arabic family.

Further, in this language peculiar forms are fixed for different classes of nouns and adjectives indicating peculiar meanings.

For instance, the nouns of the forms *maf'alun* (مفعَل) signify place or time of action; those of the forms *mif'alun* (مفعَل), *mif'alatun* (مفعلة), *mif'álun* (مفعال), and *fi'alun* (فعال), indicate the instrument or medium of action. So the nouns of the form *fu'alun* (فعال) generally imply disease, sickness, or ailment; while those of the form *fa'úlun* (فعلول) signify medicines. Again, nouns of the form *fa'ilun* (فعليل), and *fu'alun* (فعال) imply different sounds.

Similarly, one of the most striking peculiarities of the Arabic is the possession of numerous forms of derivative verbs. When a primitive verb assumes one of these forms, it assumes also a definite additional meaning.

One of these formal peculiarities is this that sometimes a verb is formed out of a sentence by way of abbreviation; as *hallala* (هلل) he uttered *لا اله الا الله* "there is no god but God;" *istarja'a* (استرجع) he uttered *انا لله وانا اليه راجعون* "verily we are of God, and verily we are to return to Him;" *hau-laqa* (حولق) he uttered *لا حول ولا قوة الا بالله العلي العظيم* "there is no strength or power but with God, the most High and Great;" *dam'aza* (دمعن) he uttered *ادام الله عزك* "may God preserve thy honour," etc. Through these formal peculiarities, long sentiments are expressed in very few words. For instance, *اخرفت الشاة* "the sheep brought forth young ones at the season of autumn." Besides these, many other advantages can be drawn from the peculiar forms of verbs.



The Arabic, being a language which attained an early development and one which was long written in and spoken by races of an intellectual cultivation and an enterprising spirit far in advance of their age, has undoubtedly supplied multitudes of words of the languages of the West by the direct method of adoption and naturalisation. It has done the same more obviously and openly, as every one knows, for many oriental languages, such as the Persian, the Hindustani, the Turkish, the Malaya; and the technical terminology of some branches of science and of some branches of commerce is mainly drawn from Arabic in most of the well-known languages of Europe and Asia. Many of the analogies set forth in the following list may doubtless be proved to have originated in this way; and many more are due to the fact that this borrowing from the copious and expressive vocabulary of the Arabic has been carried on for centuries in the languages of the West—in the Spanish especially, which partly grew up under the shadow of the Arab rule in Spain—to a large extent in the Italian, French, and other languages of the Mediterranean shores—perhaps even in the classical languages themselves of Greece and Rome.

*List of words common to Arabic and English, having absolutely or very nearly the same meaning in both languages.*

ARABIC

ENGLISH

ايد *aid*

... Aid.

ARABIC	ENGLISH
الزرنيخ or الزرنيق	} <i>alzirnīkh, alzirniq</i> Arsenic.
أمير البحر <i>amirulbahr</i>	... Admiral (Spanish <i>Almirante</i> ).
القاضي or القائد	} <i>alqāḍī or alqāid</i> ... Alcaid.
شرب <i>shurb</i>	... Absorb.
also شراب <i>sharāb</i>	... Syrup
أمن <i>āmin</i>	... Amen ( <i>Hebrew</i> ).
الكيمياء <i>alkīmiyā</i>	... Alchemy.
القبة <i>alqubbah</i>	... Alcove.
عالم <i>'ālimun</i>	... Alumni.
الأنبيق <i>alimbīq</i>	... Alembic.
عنبر <i>'ambar</i>	... Amber.
الكحل <i>alkuhl</i>	... Alcohol.
أطلس <i>atlas</i>	... Atlas.
دار الصناعة <i>dārussanā'at</i>	... Arsenal.
الجبر <i>aljabr</i>	... Algebra
ياقوت <i>yāqūt</i>	... Agate.
دراية or الدراية <i>dirāyat, addirāyat</i> <sup>1</sup>	Adroit.
عليل <i>'alīl</i>	... Ail.
القلي <i>alqilī</i>	... Alkali.

<sup>1</sup> It means in Arabic *intelligence*, which is akin to the meaning of the English word.

ARABIC	ENGLISH
عاجل <i>ājil</i>	... Agile.
أنا <i>ānan</i>	... Anon.
عمليات <i>āmaliyat</i>	... Amulet.
بيع <i>bai' or bai'un</i>	... Buy.
بضاعة or بز <i>bidhā'at, baz</i>	... Baize.
بق <i>baq<sup>1</sup></i>	... Bug.
ميمون <i>maimūn</i>	... Baboon
بلسان <i>balasān</i>	... Balsam.
اسقف <i>usquf</i>	... Bishop (Greek επισκοπος)
بئیس <i>bais</i>	... Base.
بريق <i>bariq</i>	... Bright.
بابوس <i>bābūs</i>	... Babe.
بیاضی <i>bayāḍun</i>	... Baize.
بورق <i>bauraq<sup>2</sup></i>	... Borax.
قابل <i>qābil</i>	... Capable.
کافور <i>kāfūr</i>	... Camphor.
قندیل <i>qindil</i>	... Candle.
کفن <i>kafan</i>	... Coffin.
کیس <i>kis</i>	... Case.
قال <i>qāla</i>	... Call.
قنا <i>qanā</i>	... Cane.

<sup>1</sup> It means mosquito as generally known, but it also means a bug.

<sup>2</sup> An Arabicism of the Persian word *bora*

ARABIC	ENGLISH
كوب or قعب <i>kúb</i> or <i>qa'b</i>	... Cup.
غفر <i>ghafr</i>	... Cover.
كهف <i>kahf</i>	... Cave (Latin <i>cavus</i> ).
كعب <i>ka'b</i>	... Cube (Greek <i>κ'υβος</i> ).
قط or قطع <i>qat</i> , or <i>qat'</i>	... Cut (Welsh <i>cwt</i> ).
جمال <i>jamal</i> (Heb. <i>gamel</i> )	... Camel.
خيم <i>khaím</i>	... Camp.
قط <i>qiṭ</i>	... Cat (German <i>katze</i> ., Gaelic <i>cat</i> ).
صفر <i>ṣifr</i>	... Cypher (cipher)
قطن <i>quṭun</i>	... Cotton.
قلم <i>qalum</i> <sup>1</sup>	... Calamus (Latin).
قيراط <i>qirát</i>	... Carat.
قرناس <i>qurnás</i>	... Cornice.
قند <i>qand</i>	... Candy.
خليفة <i>khalifah</i>	... Calif or Khaliph.
قام <i>qáma</i> <sup>2</sup>	... Come (Anglo-Saxon <i>cuman</i> ).
كيمياء <i>kimiya</i>	... Chemistry.
خندق <i>khandaq</i>	... Conduit (Latin <i>duco</i> ).
دلفين <i>dulfin</i> ,	... Dolphin.
دمشق <i>dimasq</i> or دمشق <i>dim-</i> <i>qás</i>	... Damask.

<sup>1</sup> A reed-pen.

<sup>2</sup> It means to stand, but used with the preposition *ilá* it means to proceed.

ARABIC	ENGLISH
دون <i>dún</i>	... Down.
ترجمان <i>tarjumán</i>	... Dragoman (Sp. <i>trujaman</i> ).
درهم <i>dirham</i>	... Drachm, dram (Greek <i>δραχμή</i> ).
الفيلة <i>alfilat</i>	... Elephant.
ارض <i>ard</i>	... Earth (Anglo Saxon <i>eorth</i> ).
عين or اعين <i>ain</i> or <i>a'yun</i>	... Eye, pl. eyes.
الاكسير <i>aliksír</i>	... Elixir.
فيض <i>faid</i>	... Fuse (Latin <i>fundo</i> , <i>fusum</i> ).
فلك or فلكه <i>fulk</i> or <i>fulka</i>	... Felucca.
بلنط <i>balnaṭ</i> or <i>balant</i>	... Flint.
فلاة <i>falát</i>	... Flate, plate.
غربال <i>ghirbál</i> }	... Garble.
غريالة <i>gharbalah</i> }	
غلط <i>ghalaṭ</i>	... Guilt.
جليد <i>jalid</i>	... Gelid (Latin <i>gelidus</i> ).
خف <i>khuf</i>	... Hoof.
حاد <i>hád</i> }	... Hot, heat.
حار <i>hár</i> }	
حمق or احمق <i>humuq</i> , <i>ahmaq</i>	... Humbug.
حرم <i>haram</i>	... Harem.
غزال <i>qházál</i>	... Gazelle.
غول <i>ghúl</i>	... Ghoul.

ARABIC	ENGLISH
جنس <i>jins</i>	... Genus (Latin).
زنجبيل <i>zanjabīl</i>	... Ginger.
زرافة <i>zurāfah</i>	... Giraffe (Fr. and Sp. <i>girafa</i> ).
غرغرة <i>ghargharah</i>	... Gargle.
هالة <i>hālah</i>	... Halo (Greek αλως).
حمد <i>hamd</i>	... Hymn (Greek <i>hymnos</i> ).
اساطير <i>asātīr</i>	... History (Greek ιστορια, ιστορ).
هيهات <i>haihāt</i>	... Heigh-ho.
ياسمين <i>yāsmīn</i>	... Jasmine.
ايضا <i>aiḍan</i>	... Identity (Latin <i>idem</i> ).
علة <i>illah</i>	... Ill.
الكابوس <i>alkābūs</i>	... Incubus.
جلاب <i>jullāb</i>	... Julep.
جرّة or زبر <i>jarrah</i> or <i>zīr</i>	... Jar.
كرفس <i>kursuf</i>	... Kerchief.
قتل <i>katl</i>	... Kill.
لحد <i>lahd</i>	... Lid.
لامع <i>lami'un</i>	... Lumine.
ولد <i>walad</i>	... Lad (Welsh <i>llawd</i> ).
العقار <i>alu'qar</i>	... Liquor (Latin).
ليمون <i>laimūn</i>	... Lemon (French <i>limon</i> ).
لوزينج <i>lūzīnaj</i>	... Lozenge.
لغو or لغة <i>lughu</i> or <i>lughat</i>	... Logic (Greek λογος).
لينّة <i>linat</i>	... Lenity (Latin <i>lenis</i> ).

ARABIC	ENGLISH
مسجد <i>masjid</i>	... Mosque (Sp. <i>mezquita</i> ).
لَعَق <i>la'g</i>	... Lick.
مسك <i>misk</i>	... Musk.
ميل <i>mil</i>	... Mile.
مصيطن <i>muṣaiṭur</i>	... Master.
ميدان <i>midán</i>	... Meadow.
مخزن <i>makhzan</i>	... Magazine.
مِرْآة <i>mirát</i>	... Mirror.
موسم <i>mausim</i>	... Monsoon.
موميا <i>múmiyá</i>	... Mummy.
منجنيق or مجانيق 'rom Per- sian منجنيك	{ <i>manjaniq</i> or <i>majániq</i> Mechanic.
مطران <i>maṭrán</i>	... Metropolitan (Greek <i>μητροπολις</i> ).
مر <i>murr</i>	... Myrrh, myrtle.
منارة <i>manárat</i>	... Minaret.
(ملح) املاح <i>imláj, malj</i>	... Míłch.
مرح <i>marah</i>	... Mirth, merry.
مطر <i>miṭv</i>	... Mate.
معني <i>ma'ni</i>	... Mean.
مثلة <i>muthlah</i>	... Mutilate (Latin <i>mutilo</i> ).
من <i>mann</i>	... Manna (Hebrew).
؟	

ARABIC	ENGLISH
عنق 'unuq	... Neck.
نفرة <i>nafrat</i>	... Nefarious (Latin <i>ne fas</i> ).
نبيل و نبل <i>nabil or nubil</i>	... Noble (Latin <i>nobilis</i> ).
ناموس <i>námús</i>	... Nomos (Greek).
نظر <i>nazar</i>	... Nadir.
نفت <i>naft</i>	... Naphtha (Greek <i>va'φθα</i> ).
نارنج <i>náranj</i>	... Orange.
فردوس <i>firdaus</i>	... Paradise.
بطريق <i>biṭríq</i>	... Patriarch (Latin <i>patricus</i> ).
فهد <i>fahd</i>	... Pard.
بلبل او بلابل <i>bulbul or balábil</i>	... Philomela (Greek).
فستق <i>fustaq</i> (Pers <i>pista</i> )	... Pistachio.
قنطار <i>qintár</i>	... Quintal.
قديم <i>qadimun</i>	... Quondam.
رائض <i>ráid</i>	... Ride.
رفض <i>rafḍ</i>	... Refuse (Latin <i>refundo</i> , i.e. <i>fusum</i> ).
سكر <i>sukkar</i>	... Sugar.
اسفنج <i>isfanj</i>	... Sponge.
استورة <i>ustúra</i>	... Story ( <i>see</i> History).
شكال <i>shikal</i>	... Shackle.
سقمونيا <i>saqmúniya</i>	... Scamony (Greek <i>σκαμωνι'α</i> ).
زعفران <i>za'farán</i>	... Saffron.



ARABIC	ENGLISH
إسطبل <i>isṭabl</i>	... Stable (Latin <i>stabulum</i> , <i>sto</i> ).
سنا <i>saná</i> ( <i>light</i> )	... Sun.
سقرلاط <i>saqarlát</i>	... Scarlet.
سلو <i>suluw</i>	... Solace (Lati <i>solatium</i> , <i>solor</i> ).
جدول <i>jadwál</i> <sup>1</sup>	... Schedule.
صندل <i>ḡandul</i>	... Sandal.
صلد <i>ḡald</i>	... Solid.
سلك <i>silk</i>	... Silk.
شرقيين <i>sharqiin</i>	... Saracen.
سلطان <i>sultán</i>	... Sultan.
سنا <i>saná</i>	... Senna.
سماق <i>sumáq</i>	... Smack.
صلب <i>ḡulb</i>	... Slab (Welsh <i>yslab</i> ).
القحف <i>alqaḥf</i>	... Scalp.
ساق <i>sáq</i>	... Shank (Anglo-Saxon <i>scanc</i> ).
صلوة <i>ḡalát</i>	... Salute (Latin <i>salus</i> )
شمراخ <i>shimrákh</i>	... Shamrock (Irish <i>seamrog</i> ).
شهد <i>shahd</i>	... Sweet.
عصفور <i>uṣfúr</i>	... Sparrow.
وشل <i>washal</i>	... Shallow, shoal.
طريق <i>ṭariq</i>	... Track.
طعنة <i>ṭa'nat</i>	... Taunt.

---

<sup>1</sup> As used in arithmetical works.

ARABIC	ENGLISH
طوفان <i>ṭufān</i>	... Typhoon.
طسق <i>ṭasaq</i>	... Tax, task (Latin <i>tazo</i> ).
طال <i>ṭála</i>	... Tall (Welsh <i>tal</i> ).
طلق <i>ṭalq</i>	... Tale.
طرس <i>ṭirs</i>	... Terse.
تريب <i>tarib</i>	... Rib.
استبرق <i>istabraq</i>	... Tabric.
بيطار <i>baiṭár</i>	... Veterinary.
عود <i>'úd</i>	... Wood.
وسط <i>wasṭ</i>	... Waist (Welsh <i>guasg</i> ).
وهم <i>wahm</i>	.. Whim.
زر <i>zir</i>	... Zero (Spanish and Italian).
زنة <i>zinat</i>	... Zenith (Spanish <i>zenit</i> ).

In modern Arabic, many words of foreign origin, especially of the Persian, have been imported; most of them having undergone certain changes called تعريب *Arabiaḥm*, which are often necessary for assimilating them to the aboriginal elements of the language. Such words are called مولدة *Muwalladah* "coined."

It is, however, a great credit to the Arabian translators of the sciences from the Greek, that they have tried their utmost to render all the scientific terms into genuine Arabic; even in many cases, they have been obliged to coin new terminology

instead of using the original Greek terms. Hence (except in the medical works in which terms of Greek origin are to be seen in a larger scale) very few technical terms of Greek origin are to be found in the Arabic Philosophical treatises. When Logic was translated into Arabic, there arose a difficulty for the want of *Logical Copula* in the Arabic vocabulary corresponding with the word *εστι* or *εστιν* in the Greek. After much deliberation, the Arabian interpreters of sciences were pleased to adopt the word *هو* *huwa*, which is originally a personal pronoun, to serve the use of a copula.<sup>1</sup> However, such Greek terms as (εισαγωγία) (ایساوجی), (θεολογία) (θολογία), (γεωμετρία) (جوميطريا), (στοιχειον) (اسطقس), (γεωγραφία) (جغرافيا), (κατηγορία) (قائىغورىاس), (αριθμητική) (ارثماطيقى), etc., are to be found in such ancient authors on philosophy as Shaikh Bu Ali Ibn Sina (Avicenna), etc.

Some Latin words have also been imported into Arabic either through commercial intercourse or by the scientific interpreters.

Although Arabic bears some external affinity with Sanskrit, for instance, in having dual number, and final *nūnation* which corresponds with *anusār* of the Sanskrit words; yet the intrinsic construction of the Arabic language evidently differs from that of Sanskrit. We do not find any words of Sanskrit origin in the Arabic vocabulary except the

---

<sup>1</sup> Vide Hamdullah : "The Commentary on Sullam," a famous work on Logic.

following which have been imported into the Arabic language through the Hindu physicians and mathematicians who were invited to the courts of the Abbaside Caliphs of Baghdad :

سندھند	Arabicism of the Sanskrit,	...	सिद्धान्त
اطریفل	„	„	विफला
نارجیل	„	„	नारिकेल
بیش	„	„	विष

Before the advent of our Prophet, the Arabic language was divided into two chief dialects, viz., the language of the Quraish which was spoken in the province of Hijaz, and the language of Himyar which was used in the province of Yaman. But after the introduction of Islām, the first had prevailed over the other and became the language of the literature.

The genuine Arabic literature, or as it is called العلوم الادبية *Al'ulūmul adabiyah* "Polite learning," or العلوم العربية *Al'ulūmul 'Arabiyyah* "the Arabian learning," consists of twelve branches each of which is held to be an independent science. Again, eight of these are supposed to be *Uṣūl* or primary, and the rest *Furū'* or secondary. Three of the former belong to the words in their detached forms (مفردات) *mufradāt*. They are 1st, (علم الصرف) *'Ilmuṣṣarf*, Science of Inflection or Etymology, which treats of the different forms of single words ; 2nd, (علم اللغة) *'Ilmullughat*, Lexicology, which treats of the primitive roots and the derivative forms of the words ; 3rd, (علم الاشتقاق) *'Ilmulishtiqaq*,

science of Derivation, which shows the comparative relation of one word to another distinguishing the primitive from the derivative. The rest five appertain to the words in their composite forms. These are: 1st, (علم النحو) '*Ilmunnahv* or (علم الاعراب), '*Ilmul'I'rab*, Syntax, which treats of the proper mode of composing single words into sentences and appropriating to them the proper (اعراب) '*Iráb* or case-endings; 2nd, (علم المعانى) '*Ilmulma'áni*, a branch of Rhetoric which is defined as a science which shows how a speech should be made adapted to the peculiar predicaments of a person to whom it is addressed by using different figures of speech; 3rd, (علم البيان) '*Ilmulbayán* (another branch of Rhetoric), the science of Perspicuity which is defined to be a science which teaches the ways of making words signifying the same meaning by the different ways of clearness or perspicuity in signification, including the various ways of using metaphor, simile, and other figures of Rhetoric; 4th, (علم البدیع) '*Ilmulbadi'*, the science of decorating or embellishing eloquent speech by different ways of plays upon words as pun, alliteration, euphony, etc.; 5th, (علم العروض) '*Ilmul'ariḍ*, the science of Metre; 6th, (علم القوافی) '*Ilmulqawáfi*, the science of Rhymes; 7th, (علم الخط) '*Ilmulkhaṭ*, the science of Writing or Orthographical rules; 8th, (علم قرض الشعر) '*Ilmu-qarḍish-shi'r*, the science of Versification; 9th, (علم الانشاء) '*Ilmul inshá*, the science of Composition; 10th, (علم المحاضرات) '*Ilmulmuḥáḍḍarát*, the science which enables man to quote and apply historical facts and the sayings of the

ancients to proper places in conversation. This last includes Geography, Biography and History. According to some *علم التفسير* 'Ilmuttafsir, the science of interpretation of the *Qurán*, *علم الحديث* 'Ilmulḥadith, the science of the Traditional sayings of the Prophet, and *علم الفقه*, *Ilmul fiqh*, the science of Jurisprudence, are also considered to be the necessary parts of an accomplished science of literature.

These are the constituent parts of the genuine Arabic Literature or *العلوم العربية* *Al'ulūmul 'arabiyah*. But the literature of Arabic in its widest sense, as it is known in Europe by the term of Belles Lettres or general literature, consists of various branches of learning which bring under its head *علم المنطق*, 'Ilmul mantiq, the science of Dialectics or Logic ; *علم الحكمة*, 'Ilmul hikmat, Philosophy ; *علم تهذيب الاخلاق*, 'Ilmu tahdhibil akhlāq, Ethics, etc., which are called by the Arabic literati *اذبال الادب*, *Adhiyalul adab*, the skirts or borders, *i.e.*, Supplements or Appendices of literature, *i.e.*, such branches which are desirable to acquire to make a person an accomplished literary man.

In Arabia as in other countries, the art of versification or the writing of poetry seems to precede prose writing. We have no prose productions written before the advent of the Prophet and the Revelation of the *Qurán*. The history and the genealogy of the ancient Arabs were preserved in verses. Hence, when the *Súrah*s of the holy *Qurán* were given out by

our Prophet, the heathens of Arabia, being struck with their peculiar mode of composition, were rather bewildered. Sometimes seeing that it had rhymes they were inclined to call it poetry, but ultimately finding no metre in it, they began to hesitate to call it so, and ascribed such compositions to the influence of genii, etc.

The era of Arabic literature may be divided into three epochs or ages. The first, or the age before the advent of our Prophet, is called *الايام الجاهلية*, *Alayyámul jáhiliyah*, the age of ignorance or Ante-Islamic age ; the second, or the age contemporaneous with the Prophet, is termed *الايام المخضمية*, *Alayyámul mukhadramiyah* ; and the third, or the age after the Prophet and the promulgation of Islam, is named *الايام الاسلامية*, *Alayyámul islamiyah*, Islamic age. In the first period or the Pre-Islamic age, there was very little cultivation of science. Before the rise of Islam, the literary lore of the Arabs was confined to the exercise of imagination. There was an annual poetical competition in the renowned fair of 'Ukáz. Such poems as excelled others in the general competition were written with gold and were suspended on the roof of the *ka'báh*. The poetical collection called Sab'a *Mu'alláqa* or *Mu'allaqát*, i.e., seven suspended poems, which is still read by every Arabic scholar with enthusiasm, contains several of them.

The poetry of this period as well as of the age called *Mukhadramiah* *مخضمية* consists, first, of odes termed *Qasidah* *قصيدة*

which were regarded as complete poems, and which were all designed to be chanted or sung ; secondly, of shorter compositions called *qiṭ'ah* قطعة or pieces, many of which were also designed to be chanted or sung ; and, thirdly, of couplets ابیات *abyát* or single verses. In the first of these classes are usually included all poems of more than fifteen verses ; but a few odes consist of less than fifty verses or much more than a hundred. Of such poems none is believed to have existed of an age more than four or five generations before the advent of the Prophet.

The characteristics of the pre-Islamic poetry are generally the following:—They often contain such words as are very seldom used in modern productions and which bear much affinity with those of the Hebrew, Syriac and other ancient Semitic languages. The ideas or thoughts of those poems are very simple in nature, not having the sublimities and exquisite beauties which are seen in the productions of the Islamic period. Their themes generally consist of the following subjects:—on *Hamásah* (حماسة) heroic deeds, *Marsiah* (مرثية) elegy, *Hijá* (هجاء) satire, *Madh* (مدح) eulogy, boasting of lineal descent, and very seldom on *Adab* (ادب) morality. Mr. Lane in the Preface of his Arabic Lexicon says, “ The classical poetry is predominantly objective, sensuous, and passionate ; with little imagination, or fancy except in relation to phantoms or spectres, and to *jinn*, or genii, and other fabulous beings ; and much less artificial than most of the later poetry, many of the authors



of which, lacking the rude spirit of the *Badawís*, aimed chiefly at more elegances of diction and play upon words." "Generally speaking, in the classical poetry," he continues, "the descriptions of nature, of the life of the desert, of night-journeyings and day-journeyings, with their various incidents, of hunting, and stalking, and lurking for game, of the tending of camels, of the gathering of wild honey, and similar occupations, are most admirable."

As poetical thoughts generally keep pace with the progress of civilization in a country, the Arabic poems in point of thought seem to have been in gradual advancement in rhetorical beauties, figures, metaphors, etc., along with the progress of civilization. Hence we see a vast difference between the poems of the ancient and those of the modern Arabic poets of Egypt, Spain, Syria and Persia, which are full of elegance and beauty. We may come to this conclusion by comparing *Hamásah* (a collection of ancient classical poems by Abu Tammam) with the productions of later poets, such as *Al Mutanabbi*, Ibn Fáriz of Egypt, Baháuddín Amilí of Syria, etc.

The present Arabic literary lore consists of several classes of writing: I. Poetry, which is divided into various kinds, *viz.*, 1. *Qaṣīdah*, 2. *Qit'ah*, 3. *Band*, 4. *Dubait*, 5. *Urjúzah*, 6. *Ughnia*, 7. *Fard* or single verses. II. Prose, which consists of 1. *Maqámāt*, 2. *Munázarat*, 3. *Khuṭab*, 4. *History*, 5. *Biography*, 6. *Qaṣaṣ*.

The Arabic language, it is strange to say, like other Semitic

tongues, has no dramatical work. This defect is, however, made up in a way by *Maqámát*, *Munázarat* and *Qaṣaṣ* which shall be described hereafter.

The *Qasidah* is a long ode rarely exceeding the length of a hundred and twenty verses. The theme of the *Qasidahs* of the modern writers is generally eulogy of kings and grandees, satire, or elegy, while that of the ancient or pre-Islamic poets is description of natural scenery, hunting, nocturnal journey, qualities of horses, boasting of lineal descent, bravery, or heroic deeds, etc.

The first part or the beginning of a *Qasidah* is called *Tashbib* (تشبيب) or *Nasib* (نسيب) which describes the beauty of a beloved mistress and the ardour of love, emotions of the mind and the griefs experienced by a lover. In this part it is customary with the Arab poets to describe themselves as helpless lovers standing upon the ruins of the dwelling of their beloved mistresses and weeping and wailing for their departure from that place. The emotions excited by the fall of rain, the gloomy clouds and the flashing lightning, are often given vent to. The Arabs being a wandering nation always shift from one meadow to another, and leave the place of their temporary habitation in ruin. Such ruins called *atḥāl* (اطال) are the chief theme of the poets.

The subjects of a *Qit'ah*, i.e., shorter poem or fragment consisting of only a few verses, are chiefly description of bravery, elegy, love, hospitality, morality, etc.

The *Band* is a composition of later poets evidently borrowed from the modern Persians. It consists of several stanzas, each ending either in the same verse which is repeated throughout the poem, or in the same rhyme. Its theme is generally natural scenery, such as beauties of the vernal season, and sometimes love or description of the beauty of the beloved, etc.

The *Dubait* is also a composition of the modern writers consisting of two verses, also borrowed from the Persians, as the name shows, which is a Persian word meaning a *couplet*. The Persians call such compositions *Rubá'i*.

The *Urjuzah* is a poem in the metre *rajaz*, being generally of didactic or descriptive kind.

The *Ughniya* is a short poem intended to be set to music or sung.

Among the pre-Islamic poets Taabbata Sharran is a renowned one. Many of his poetical productions are to be found in the *Hamasa*, the famous poetical collection by Abu Tammam. His productions are chiefly *Qit'as*. Very few of his *Qasidahs* are extant. After him comes the celebrated poet Imraul Qais who was king of Kinda. He lived about 40 years before the advent of our Prophet. It is said that he had fallen in love with his cousin 'Unaizah, the effect of whose beauty and love he describes in the *tashbib* to his famous *Qasidah* in the *Mu'allaqat*. Among the authors of the Sab'a *Mu'allaqat* (seven suspended poems, i. e.) poems suspended on the walls of

the *Ka'bah* for competition). Imruul Qais is held to be superior to every one in eloquence, sublimity, etc. Next to him in rank is Labíd bin Rabíá. This poet is said to have flourished just before the promulgation of Islam. Hence it is held by some that he had the honour of seeing our Prophet and embraced the faith of Islam. Most of his poems are didactic, one of which had been admired by our Prophet himself for its wisdom.

Next to the above is 'Anar bin Kulsúm, whose *Qasidah* in the above collection is also admirable.

Among the modern or Islamic poets Abu Nuwás, Abu Tammám, Buhturí and Mutanabbí are held to have wonderful poetical genius. Abu Nuwás was one of the bards of the court of Hárún-ur-Rashíd. In some anecdotes it is stated that on one occasion the *Khalifah* (Caliph) heard a verse from one of his maid-slaves connected with a particular incident. The next morning he recited the verse in his court, asking Abu Nuwás and several other bards to compose verses impromptu in explanation of the secret allusion of the verse, in order to complete the sense. Abu Nuwás, without having any knowledge of the incident, instantaneously recited several verses which exactly described the occurrence.

Abu Tammám is one of the famous poets of the Islamic period. He flourished about the year 200 A.H. Besides his own productions, most of which are in the eulogy of the *Khalifahs*

and the grandees of his time, he is well known for the compilation of the *Hamásah* a collection of poems of various description, most of which are productions of the pre-Islamic age. This work is one of the standard books of Arabic literature. Abu Tammám is said to have got by heart about 14,000 Arabic *Urjúzahs*, besides many *qaṣidahs* and *qit'ahs*. He praised the *Khalifah* in a *qaṣidah* and was in reward invested by him with the governorship of Mausál, but he did not live long to enjoy that honourable post. He died at Mausil in the year 231 A. H. in the month of dhilqa'dah. His poetical productions are said to have not been compiled by him. They were collected and arranged in alphabetical order by Abu Bakr al-ṣúlfí. It was re-arranged by Ali bin Hamzatul Isphahani, according to the different classes of poetry.

After Abu Tammám comes Abut Ṭayyib Ahmad bin Al-Husain, surnamed Al-Mutanabbi. He was born in 303 A. H. in Kúfáh at a village of it called Kinda ; hence he is sometimes called Al-Kindi. It is said that the father of Mutanabbi was a water-carrier at Kúfáh, but afterwards he emigrated to Syria with his son who was brought up there ; and this is alluded to in the following couplet in the Satire of Mutanabbi :—

أي فضل لشاعر يطلب الفضل      من الناس بكرة وعشياً  
عاش حيناً يبيع في الكوفة الهاء      وحيناً يبيع ماء المعيا

“What honour there may be for a poet who is solicitous for gaining honour day and night from the people. He lived

sometimes by selling water at Kúfáh, and selling sometimes the water of the face (*i.e.*, honour).'' Similar satirical verses are said to have been applied to Abu Tammám.

The reason of the poet's being called Al-Mutanabbi (pretender of the prophetic mission) has been stated thus, that he once at *Bádiyat-us-samáwát* declared himself a prophet, and a large number of the people of Bani Kalb followed him, when Abu Lu'lu, the governor of Himmas, attacked and captured him. His followers were dispersed and he was imprisoned for a long time and made to renounce his false pretension. According to others the reason of his being called so is that he used to say that he was the first who adopted the title of a prophet in poetry.

He joined the court of Amír Saifuddaulah 'Alí bin Hamadan in 337 A. H., and wrote many *qaṣídahs* in his eulogy, in many of which he describes the Amir's expeditions against a Byzantine Christian king called Dumustuq. Afterwards he left the court of the Amír and proceeded to Egypt to join the court of Káfúr Ikhshídi in 316 A. H., who was a eunuch Abyssinian slave, and who after the death of his master had succeeded to his throne. In Egypt the poet lived for some time in the court of Káfúr, and wrote many *qaṣídahs* in his eulogy. At first Káfúr was very much pleased with him and promised to invest him with the governorship of some of his provinces, but seeing the independent and lofty spirit which his poetical productions

bespoke, and fearing that one who once pretended to be a prophet might as well raise his pretensions to the throne, he declined to fulfil his promise. Upon this Mutanabbí, being displeased with Káfúr, wrote several satirical *qaṣīdahs* against him, and left his court on the evening of the great festival called 'Idul Adha, in 346 A. H.

After the flight of Mutanabbí from the court of Káfúr, he sent several bodies of soldiers in all directions to seize and bring him back to the court ; but they could not arrest the fugitive poet.

Mutanabbí describes his way when flying from Káfúr in a *qaṣīdah* which begins thus:—

الاكل ماشية الخيرلى \* فدى كل ماشية الهدى

“Oh! every gracefully walking beautiful lady be sacrificed to every swift-paced camel.” and ends with the satire of Káfúr when he says—

ونام الخوادم عن ليلنا \* وقد نام قبل عى لكرى

“And the slave was asleep, i. e., unaware of our night's journey ; but he was already sleepy out of blindness and not out of real sleep.”

After this Mutanabbí proceeded to Persia and visited the court of Aḍduddaulah bin Buwaih-ad-Dailami, and praised him in many *qaṣīdahs*, and got rewards from him. Afterwards when he was returning from Persia and proceeding towards Baghdad, on

his way to *Kúfáh*, on the 8th of the month of *Shá'bán* 354 A. H., he was met by *Fatik bin Abi Jahl-al-Asadi* who attacked him with his followers, with the intention of taking him prisoner to the court of *Káfúr*. *Mutanabbí* together with his son *Muhassad* and his slave *Mufallah* fell in the struggle. It is said that in the midst of the conflict, when *Mutanabbí*, perceiving the superiority of his opponent, resolved to take to flight, his slave seeing this observed, "Art not thou the same person that hast said—

فالخيل و الليل و البداء تعرفني  
و العرب و الضرب و القرطاس و القلم

'Verily the horse, the night, the desert, the battle, the sword, the paper, and the pen all know me?' Hearing this *Mutanabbí* turned back and rushed on his enemy and fell.

There is difference of opinion among the learned and scholars regarding the comparative merits of the poetical genius of *Mutanabbí* and *Abu Tammám*. According to many he excels *Abu Tammám* in the sublimity of thought and beauty of style.

*Mutanabbí's* productions are chiefly *qaṣīdahs*, many of which are extempore, being composed impromptu in the presence of kings and Amírs at their bidding. The *qaṣīdahs* composed by him in the description of expeditions of *Saifuddaulah* are very graphic.

The fine prose writing in Arabic is chiefly composed of rhymed sentences. The copiousness of the language and there



being the same derivative forms of different words of different roots, which are necessarily assonant to each other, facilitate the use of rhyme. Hence it may almost be said that in the later period there can scarcely be found any narration or oratory of the highest order which is not written in rhymed prose. This sort of prose writing, I may say, is just reverse to the blank verse of the European languages, as the latter has metre but no rhyme, and the former has rhyme without metre. Hence Mr. Thomas Chenery, the translator of the *Assemblies* of *Al-Hariri*, calls such sort of prose writing in Arabic a kind of poetry.

The *Maqámát* are generally written in the best style of rhymed prose. The character of a *Maqámát* is that a witty unscrupulous improviser or orator, wandering from place to place, and living on the presents which the display of his orations produces from the generous and tasteful, and a kind of *rávi* or narrator who should be continually meeting with the other, should relate his adventures and repeat his excellent compositions, are imagined. It is called *Maqámát* or "Assembly," because the improviser is always introduced as making his appearance in some company of strangers, among whom the narrator happens to be, and astonishing them by his rhetorical orations and poetry. This is an advance towards the dramatic style in which the Arabic language is wanting. It will be readily understood that the rhetorician and the narrator are

only put forward to give liveliness to the compositions, and the object of the author is to display his eloquence, his poetical power and his learning.

The first writer of the Maqámát is Badíuzzaman Al-Hamdani, a native of Hamdan in Persia. In his Máqamát he has made Abul Fath Al-Iskandari as the hero or improvisating orator and 'Isa bin Hishám as the narrator. These Maqámát, though in themselves full of eloquence, are inferior to those of his imitator Al-Hariri, in point of rhetorical beauties.

Abu Muhammad Al-Qasim bin 'Ali bin 'Uthmán, surnamed Al-Hariri, a native of Basra, has written his Maqámát on the model of those of Al-Hamdani; but they are longer than Hamdani's Maqámát and full of eloquence, puns, plays upon words, figures, metaphors, and many other rhetorical beauties. There is no work in the Arabic language (excepting the holy Qurán, of course, which is held to be a miracle, and far superior to any human composition) which may approach this eminent work. The hero of his Máqamat, or as it has been styled the Wandering Improviser, is Abu Zaid of Sarúj, and the rávi or narrator is Hárís bin Hammám. Hariri was one of the nobles of Basra and was a great learned man; but he was not versed in improvisation as his predecessor Al-Hamdani. He was born at Basra in the year 446 A. H. (A. D. 1054 or 1055), and he died in 516 A. H. (A. D. 1121-22) in his native city. His life was therefore contemporary with the first crusade. The reason

of his being called Al-Harîrî is, according to some, his having trade of *harîr* or silk, and according to some others, his having been born at a village called Al-Harîr. But it is more probable that it might have been on account of his father being engaged in that trade, for our author does not appear to have at any time had other than literary pursuits.

Next to the *Maqâmât* come *Mundâzarât* or Controversies. This is a sort of writing in the form of a dialogue in which two persons are imagined disputing with each other on the merits and demerits of two different things, each trying to give preference to his own chosen object. This sort of writing is also written in rhymed prose, and speeches, argumentative and full of eloquence and rhetorical beauties, are said to have been delivered by both disputing parties. There are many *munâzarât*, such as controversy between the Sword and the Pen, in which the comparative excellences of civil and military life are described; the controversy between the Eye and the Ear, and so forth. In India several *munâzarâhs* are extant, two of which are inserted by the celebrated Shaikh Ahmad Shirwani in his renowned compilation entitled **Nafhatul Yaman**. They are *munazarât* or controversy between the Narcissus and the Rose, and between the Physician and the Astrologer, of which the latter is more argumentative and elegant. Another is **Ikhwanussafa**, a controversy between Reason and Instinct. In *Mundâzarât* as in *Maqâmât* there are some poetical pieces interspersed hither and thither.

Besides the *Maqámát* and *Munázarát*, the **Khutab** or sermons also form a part of Arabic literature. These are generally collections of eloquent addresses containing admonitions and warnings tending to moral instruction. They are also generally written in rhymed prose in which a great deal of the power of eloquence and oration is shown. Among such writings is **Atwaqudhhdhahab** by Az-Zamakhshari, a celebrated commentator of the Qurán and a great Arabic grammarian. This book, though short, excels many eminent authors in point of eloquence of diction.

The writers of historical and biographical works also sometimes indulge in showing their rhetorical powers and eloquence. The History of Tímúr (Tamerlane), by Ibn 'Arabsháh, the **Tárikh -i- Yamíní** (history of Sultan Mahmud) by Utbí, a writer contemporaneous with the Sultan, **Nafhuttib** (history of Spain during the Muhammadan rule) by Almaqri, may serve as specimens. Regarding the history of Tímúr, Mr. Chenery says: "This composition which approaches nearer to the epic poem than any in the language, is one of the latest productions of the great ages of Arabian literature. Sir W. Jones bears witness to the genius of the author..... In this work rhyme and assonance abound with luxuriance, that almost oppresses the reader, and the employment of such a style by an author of originality and genius, who had before him the greatest productions of his predecessors, shows how deeply rooted

in the nature of the people was the sentiment for unmetrical cadence."

Among the **Qasas** or the works of fiction are the famous **Alf Lailah** or the Arabian Nights' Entertainments and the story of Shaddad bin 'Antara. The latter is in a classical style, full of elegance and beauty. It contains fine poetical pieces quoted at proper places. The former is composed in a very homely style, and the language is colloquial and flowing. It has also fine happy poetical pieces of different authors quoted in proper places, which add much to the beauty and give pleasure to the reader. Some hold that the Arabian Nights has been composed under the auspices of the Caliphs of Baghdad, of the social refinement and the splendour of whose courts it gives such lively pictures as are exhibited in many of its tales. But according to some it is a subsequent production, because it contains many stories of a later period.

---



# GRAMMAR

## OF

# ARABIC LANGUAGE

### PART I

#### ORTHOGRAPHY

There are twenty-eight letters in the Arabic alphabet all of which are considered consonants. They are arranged in the following order :

<i>Names.</i>	<i>Detached form.</i>	<i>Combined forms:</i>		
		<i>Initial.</i>	<i>Medial.</i>	<i>Final.</i>
Alif	ا	اب	سال	ما
Bá	ب	بسر	عبد	لب
Tá	ت	تب	كتب	بت
Thá	ث	ثور	كثر	ليث
Jím	ج	جود	عجز	بلج
Há	ح	حور	سعر	سلم
Khá	خ	خد	صخر	سلخ
Dál	د	در	كدر	ولد
Dhál	ذ	ذر	نذر	فلذ
Rá	ر	رجب	كرب	حبر
Zá	ز	زلق	فزل	فلز
Sín	س	سلف	كسل	حسن

<i>Names.</i>	<i>Detached</i>		<i>Combined forms :</i>	
	<i>form.</i>	<i>Initial.</i>	<i>Medial.</i>	<i>Final.</i>
Shín	ش	شرف	كشف	نقش
Şád	ص	صدف	فصل	قفص
Ḍád	ض	ضرر	غضب	حفص
Tá	ط	طلق	مطل	غلط
Zá	ظ	ظلم	كظم	غيظ
'Ain	ع	عرب	كعب	بلع
Ghain	غ	غرب	شغف	بلغ
Fá	ف	فكر	كفر	كلف
Qáf	ق	قفل	نقل	فلق
Káf	ك	كفل	شكل	دلک
Lám	ل	لبل	علم	ذبل
Mím	م	موج	حمر	نظم
Nún	ن	نور	كنز	سغن
Wáw	و	ورد	حول	دلو
Há	ه	هضم	كهل	سفه
Yá	ی	بد	کید	ظبی

These letters are sometimes used for numerical purposes, there being a fixed value for each. They are then arranged in the following order :

ا	ب	ج	د	ه	و	ز	ح	ط	ي	ك	ل	م	ن	س	ع
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶	۷	۸	۹	۱۰	۲۰	۳۰	۴۰	۵۰	۶۰	۷۰
ف	ص	ق	ر	ش	ت	ث	خ	ذ	ض	ظ	غ				
۸۰	۹۰	۱۰۰	۲۰۰	۳۰۰	۴۰۰	۵۰۰	۶۰۰	۷۰۰	۸۰۰	۹۰۰	۱۰۰۰				



These are often collected in the following eight mnemonic-technical words:—

ابجد هوز حطي كلمن سعفص قرشت ثخذ ضظغ

This order differs from that given in the alphabet, and nearly corresponds with that of the Hebrew, Greek and Syriac alphabets.

Among these twenty-eight letters, three, viz., و - ا - ي are called (حروف العلة) *infirm letters*; and the rest (صحيح) *strong or perfect*.

There are certain marks or vowel-points without the aid of which no letters can form words or syllables. They are called (حركات), or *Motions*; they are respectively termed (ضمة) *Dammah* (ـِ), (فتحة) *Fathah* (ـَ), and (كسرة) *Kasrah* (ـِ). Any letter bearing one of these vowel-points is called (متحرك) *movable*. A letter which has no vowel-point is called (ساكن), *quiescent or inert*. The sign of quiescence (ـْ) is called *jazm*.

When two letters coalesce together, this is called (ادغام) *Duplication*. The sign of a *duplication* (ـّ) is termed تشديد *Tashdid*, as مَدَد for مَدّ.

The letter (و) *Wāw* is held to be homogeneous to *Dammah* (ا) *Alif* to *Fathah* and *Ya*, (ي) to *Kasrah*.

When a quiescent *infirm letter* is preceded by a homogeneous vowel-point, it is called مَدَّة “prolonged,” because they then prolong the sound of the preceding vowel, as in مال, جود and

جيد<sup>1</sup>; otherwise it is called لين "lenient or soft" as in خود and قيد.

When the letter *Alif* is movable, as in أَخَذَ, or *quiescent* with a rough pronunciation as in رَأْسٌ, it is then held to be *Hamzah*, and when it is quiescent with a smooth pronunciation as in قَالَ, it is called *Alif*.

### *The use of Hamzah*

When a *hamzah* occurs in the beginning of a word, it is written in the form of an *alif*, as أَمَرَ "he ordered;" and when it occurs in the middle being at the same time quiescent, it is represented by any of the infirm letters, according to the vowel-point of the preceding letter, as يَأْمُرُ, بَوَّسَ and بَوَّسَ; but when it is movable and preceded by a quiescent letter, it is represented by any of the infirm letters according to its own vowel-point, as نَلُومُ and يَسْأَلُ. When a *hamzah* happens to be in the middle and movable, or when it is at the end of a word, preceded (in both cases) by a movable letter, it is written sometimes in the form of an infirm letter according to the vowel-point of the preceding letter, as سَأَلَ, مَوْجَلٌ, and جَزَزَ, and sometimes in the form of its own vowel-point, as سَأَلَ. And when it occurs at the end preceded by a quiescent letter, it does

---

<sup>1</sup> When ي is a *maddah*, i.e. preceded by a letter bearing the vowel-point *Kasrah*, this *Kasrah* is written erect (◌ِ) not inclined.

not take the form of any infirm letter, being written only in its ordinary form, as <sup>أ</sup>خبء<sup>١</sup>

The *hamzah* of the word ابن (son) is omitted in writing, when the name of the father follows in apposition. as زيد بن عمرو (Zeid the son of 'Amr), otherwise it must be retained in writing as زيد ابن اخينا (Zeid the son of our brother).

When an *Alif* is got by a change from the letter ي or when it is the fourth or above the fourth letter of a word and not preceded by a ي, it is written in this form (أ), as مصطفى and رمى, otherwise it is written in the ordinary form of *Alif* (ا), as دعا, originally دَعَوُ and دنوا originally دَنَوُ

The letters are divided into the following *five* classes according to the organs of speech by which they are pronounced :

- (1) Six *gutturals*, viz., أ ح خ ع غ ه and ؤ.
- (2) Four *labials*, viz., ب ف م و.
- (3) Four *palatals*, viz., ج ك ي ع.
- (4) Eight *dentals*, viz., ت ث د ذ ط ظ ل ن.
- (5) Six *linguals*, viz., ض ص ش س ز ر.

The last two classes are called *Solar* letters and the rest *Lunar*. When the definite article ال (the) is prefixed to a word commencing with a *Solar* letter, the final ل of the article loses its sound and takes that of the letter it precedes ; thus الرحمن (Ar-rahmán), الشمس (Ash-shams), السفينة (As-safínah).

---

<sup>1</sup> It is to be borne in mind that in all these cases the crooked mark (ء) is put above the letter.

The vowel-points of the last letter of a word, are often read with a *Núnation*, called *Tanween*, to indicate which double vowel-points are put over the letter, as زَيْدٌ - زَيْدًا - زَيْدٌ

The vowel *Fathah* with *Tanween*, requires the letter *Alif* which does not, however, prolong the sound of the final syllable. The *Alif* is not required when the noun ends with the letter ة or with a *hamzah* as حِكْمَةٌ امرءٌ

The letter *wáw* is written at the end of the proper noun عمرو, without in any way affecting the sound of *tanween*, to distinguish it from the name عمر Umaru; but it is not required when the *tanween* is accompanied by a *fathah* as عمراً

The letters which have dots are termed معجمة and those without dots are called مهملة. The term حروف المعجم is sometimes applicable to the whole alphabet.

## PART II

### ETYMOLOGY

#### *Parts of Speech*

In Arabic, there are three parts of speech, viz., ( اسم ) the Noun, ( فعل ) the Verb, and ( حرف ) the Particle.

A noun <sup>1</sup> ( اسم ) is defined as a self-significant word having no reference to past, present or future tenses, as فَرَسٌ “a horse,” قَتَلَ “to kill,” حَسُنَ “good.”

A verb (فعل) is defined as a self-significant word having reference to past, present or future tenses, as قَتَلَ “he killed,” يَقْتُلُ “he kills or shall kill.”

A particle (حرف) is a consignificant word which depends on another word for its signification, i.e., it does not convey any complete meaning until another word be added to it.

As مِنْ “from,” إِلَى “to,” عَلَى “upon.”

These have no complete meaning until they are joined with a noun, as :—

مِنْ الدَّارِ “From the house.”

عَلَى السَّطْحِ “Upon the roof.”

إِلَى السُّوقِ “To the market.”

---

<sup>1</sup> In Arabic the term اسم noun includes the pronouns as well as verbs in the infinitive mood, adjectives, participles, and some of the adverbs.

Here the nouns الدار "the house," السطح "the roof," etc., have been added to the particles على — من, etc., to give them some complete meaning.

Among these parts of speech, the verb being most important, we will begin with it.

### VERBS

Arab grammarians divide the verb into ماضي (Preterite), مضارع (Aorist), and امر (Imperative).

The Preterite (ماضي) is a verb which signifies the occurrence of an event in the past time, as ضَرَبَ "He struck." It is used for the Present Perfect tense also.

The Aorist (مضارع) is a verb which signifies the occurrence of an event whether in the present or future time; as يَضْرِبُ "He strikes or shall strike."

The Imperative (امر) is a verb by which a second person is commanded to perform an action, as اَضْرِبْ "Strike."

Each of the verbs, preterite and aorist, is either لازم (neuter) or متعدي (transitive), as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ نَامَ Zeid slept, ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا "Zeid struck 'Amr.'"¹

Again the transitive verbs are either معروف (of the active voice), or مجهول (of the passive voice).

The Active (معروف) is that which is attributed to the agent (فاعل) or person doing the action, as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ "Zeid struck."

¹ معروف or معلوم = Active Voice ; غير معلوم or مجهول = Passive Voice

The passive ( مَجْهُول ) is that which is attributed to the object ( مَفْعُول ) person or thing, suffering the action: <sup>ضُرِبَ</sup> زَيْدٌ "Zeid is struck."

# PRETERITE

The Arabic verbs have a distinction of Gender. There are also in Arabic three Numbers, *viz.*, **singular**, **dual**, and **plural**. Hence, the inflection of Arabic verbs ought to have amounted to eighteen ; for, as the Arabians recognise the dual number and feminine gender, it follows that there should be six inflections for each of the three persons, *i.e.*, three for the singular, dual, and plural of the masculine gender, and the same number for the feminine gender of each of the three persons ; but the first person has only two inflections, the singular first person being common to both genders, and the same number being applicable to the dual and plural of either genders, and the same inflection of the second person in the dual number is also common to both genders ; whence it follows that five are lost, leaving thirteen.

The following is the paradigm of the inflection of Preterite <sup>فَعَّلَ</sup>فَعَّلَ, beginning, as usual in Arabic Grammar, with the third person singular of the masculine gender, and ending with the first person plural, which is common to the dual and plural of both the genders, hence it is sometimes termed <sup>مَتَكَلَّمٌ مَعَ الْغَيْرِ</sup>متكلم مع الغير or the speaker along with others.

## PRETERITE ACTIVE

## Paradigm (A)

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Gender.	Person.
فَعَلُوا <sup>١</sup>	فَعَلَا	فَعَلَ	Masc.	3rd.
فَعَلْنَ	فَعَلْنَا	فَعَلْتُ	Fem.	„
فَعَلْتُمْ	فَعَلْتُمَا	فَعَلْتَ	Masc.	2nd.
فَعَلْتُنَّ	„	فَعَلْتِ	Fem.	„
فَعَلْنَا	-	فَعَلْتُ	Common.	1st.

## THE PRETERITE OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

## ماضي مجهول

A ماضي مجهول or preterite of the passive voice, is formed from the active voice by putting a *ḍammah* to the first and a *kasrah* to the medial letter in triliteral verbs ; and in verbs composed of four, five or six letters, the final letter but one gets a *kasrah* and all other movable letters preceding it are *ḍammated*, as

from فَعَلَ we get فُعِلَ

فُعِلَ      فُعِلْ  
فُعِلْ      فُعِلْ  
أُفْعِلَ      أُفْعِلْ  
أُفْعِلَ      أُفْعِلْ  
اِسْتُفْعِلَ      اِسْتُفْعِلْ

<sup>1</sup> An *Alif* is written in the plural, which is, however, not pronounced.



## Paradigm (B)

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Gender.	Person.
فَعِلُوا	فَعِلَا	فَعِلْ	Masc.	3rd.
فَعِلْنَ	فَعِلْنَا	فَعِلْتِ	Fem.	„
فَعِلْتُمْ	فَعِلْتُمَا	فَعِلْتَ	Masc.	2nd.
فَعِلْتَنَّ	فَعِلْتِنَا	فَعِلْتِ	Fem.	„
فَعِلْنَا	فَعِلَا	فَعِلْتُ	Common.	1st.

The affirmative form is known in Grammar by the term **مُثَبِّتٌ** *muthbat*, and is changed into the **منفي** *manfi*, or negative form by prefixing the negative particles **ما** or **لا** (not), as **مَا ضَرَبَ**, or **لَا ضَرَبَ** “He did not strike.”

## AORIST

The **مضارع** or *aorist*, has eleven variations of inflection, four of these being common to the remaining seven (of eighteen). It is formed from the preterite by prefixing to the different persons one or other of the letters **ن - ي - ت - ا** collected in the mnemo-technical word **أَتَيْنَ** and by changing the final *fathah* of the singular to *damma*, except in the singular second person feminine, and in the dual and plural masculine of the 3rd and 2nd persons by adding a servile *nūn* called *nūnul-'irāb* (نون الإعراب). On suffixing

these *nūns* the pronominal suffixes (ثَ - تَ - كَ - نَا - نُمَ - نَسَ) are rejected from the preterite and the first radical of the trilateral verb becomes quiescent. The aorist of the verb whose past tense is composed of four letters, has the sign of the aorist moved with *dammaḥ*, as from دَخَرَجُ, aorist يَدْخَرُجُ, from صَرَفَ, aorist يَصْرِفُ.

On prefixing the sign of aorist, the servile *hamzah* from the beginning of the preterite (if there be any) is omitted, as from بَجَنَّبُ aorist يَجَنَّبُ - يَكْرُمُ aorist أَكْرُمُ

The penultimate letter of the aorist of a preterite composed of more than three letters, receives always a *kasrah*, except when the preterite begins with the servile ت in which case it gets *fathah*, as from اسْتَخْرَجَ, aorist يَسْتَخْرِجُ and تَقَبَّلَ aorist يَقْبَلُ.

## AORIST ACTIVE

## Paradigm (C)

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Gender.	Person.
يَفْعَلُونَ	يَفْعَلَانِ	يَفْعَلُ	Masc.	3rd.
يَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلُ	Fem.	„
تَفْعَلُونَ	„	„	Masc.	2nd.
تَفْعَلْنَ	„	تَفْعَلِينَ	Fem.	„
نَفْعَلُ	—	أَفْعَلُ	Common.	1st.

The particles سوف and س preceding the aorist only restrict it to future, as سَيَضْرِبُ "He will soon strike," سَوْفَ يَضْرِبُ "He will strike," (at some remote future time). The negative particles لا and ما are also prefixed to the aorist, as لَا يَضْرِبُ "He does not or will not strike."

When the particle لَمْ is prefixed to the aorist, the last letter receives a *jazm* and all the servile *núns* of the dual of the 3rd and 2nd persons, masculine and feminine, and of the masculine plural of the 3rd and 2nd persons and of the singular of the 2nd person feminine are dropped. The particle لَمْ gives the aorist the meaning of a negative preterite, as لَمْ تَفْعَلْ "He did not do." The aorist is then termed نفى جعد بلم

Paradigm (D)

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Gender.	Person.
لَمْ يَفْعَلُوا	لَمْ يَفْعَلَا	لَمْ يَفْعَلْ	Masc.	3rd.
<sup>1</sup> لَمْ يَفْعَلْنَ	لَمْ يَفْعَلَا	لَمْ تَفْعَلْ	Fem.	„
لَمْ يَفْعَلُوا	لَمْ يَفْعَلَا	لَمْ تَفْعَلْ	Masc.	2nd.
<sup>1</sup> لَمْ يَفْعَلْنَ	لَمْ يَفْعَلَا	لَمْ تَفْعَلِي	Fem.	„
لَمْ تَفْعَلْ	لَمْ تَفْعَلْ	لَمْ أَفْعَلْ	Common.	1st.

<sup>1</sup> The *núns* in يَفْعَلْنَ and تَفْعَلْنَ not being *nánuḥ-iráb* but pronominal suffixes are not dropped.

When the **لا** (لاء النهي) of prohibition is prefixed to the aorist, the last letter receives a *jazm*, and *núns* called **نون الاعراب** are dropped. The aorist thus gets a prohibitive meaning, as **لَا يَفْعَلُ** “Let him not do;” **لَا تُفْعَلُ** “Do not thou.”

*Paradigm (E)*

Plural.	Dual.	Singular	Gender.	Person.
لَا يَفْعَلُوا	لَا يَفْعَلَا	لَا يَفْعَلُ	Masc	3rd.
لَا يَفْعَلْنَ	لَا تَفْعَلَا	لَا تَفْعَلُ	Fem.	„
لَا تَفْعَلُوا	لَا تَفْعَلَا	لَا تَفْعَلُ	Masc.	2nd.
لَا تَفْعَلْنَ	لَا تَفْعَلَا	لَا تَفْعَلِي	Fem.	„
لَا تَفْعَلْ	لَا تَفْعَلْ	لَا أَفْعَلْ	Common	1st.

لِ (called **لام الامر**) may be prefixed to the persons of the aorist, except the 2nd persons of the active voice, when the last letter, as above, receives a *jazm*, and the **نون الاعراب** are dropped. The aorist thus gets an imperative sense, as **لِيَفْعَلْ**. “Let him do.”

This **لِ**, however, often becomes quiescent when **ف** or **و** is prefixed to it, as **لِيَفْعَلْ** and **وَلِيَفْعَلْ**.

# ETYMOLOGY

## Paradigm (F)

Plural.	Dual	Singular.	Gender.	Person.
يَفْعَلُوا	يَفْعَلَا	يَفْعَلُ	Masc.	3rd.
يَفْعَلْنَ	لَتَفْعَلَا	لَتَفْعَلُ	Fem.	„
لَنَفْعَلُ	لَنَفْعَلُ	لَا فَعْلٌ	Common.	1st.

The negative particle <sup>لَ</sup>نَ being prefixed to the aorist, the *dammah* of the last letter is changed to *fathah*, and the final *nuns* (نون الأعراب) are dropped in the manner above stated. It restricts the aorist to the future adding to it an emphatic signification, as كَنَ يَفْعَلُ , He certainly will not do.

## Paradigm (G)

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Gender.	Person.
كَنَ يَفْعَلُوا	كَنَ يَفْعَلَا	كَنَ يَفْعَلُ	Masc.	3rd.
كَنَ يَفْعَلْنَ	كَنَ يَفْعَلَا	كَنَ يَفْعَلُ	Fem.	„
كَنَ يَفْعَلُوا	كَنَ يَفْعَلَا	كَنَ يَفْعَلُ	Masc.	2nd.
كَنَ يَفْعَلْنَ	كَنَ يَفْعَلَا	كَنَ يَفْعَلُ	Fem.	„
كَنَ يَفْعَلُ	كَنَ يَفْعَلُ	كَنَ أَفْعَلُ	Common.	1st.

When the *nun* ثَقِيلَة (heavy, i. e., doubled *nun*) or the خَفِيفَة (light, i. e., single quiescent *nun*) with the *lam* التَّأَكِيد (emphatical *lam*) in the beginning, are affixed to the aorist, it gets an emphatic sense.

On affixing the **نون ثقيله** to the aorist, an additional *alif* is inserted before the **ن** *nūn* in the feminine plural of the 3rd and 2nd persons, when the *nūn* itself gets a *kasrah*. The light *nūn* ( **نون خفيفة** ), is added, in the 3rd and 2nd persons, to the singular and plural masculine, to the singular of the feminine only, and to the 1st person, as in paradigm.

( ن ) نون ثقيله

Plural	Dual.	Singular.	Gender	Person.
لِبْعَلْنَ	لِبْعَلَانِ	لِبْعَلٌ	Masc.	3rd.
لِنْعَلْنَ	لِنْعَلَانِ	لِنْعَلٌ	Fem.	„
لِنْعَلْنَ	لِنْعَلَانِ	لِنْعَلٌ	Masc.	2nd
لِنْعَلْنَ	لِنْعَلَانِ	لِنْعَلٌ	Fem.	„
لِنْعَلْنَ	لِنْعَلَانِ	لَا فَعَلْ	Common.	1st.

( ن ) نون خفيفة

Plural.	Dual.	Singular	Gender.	Person.
لِبْعَلْنَ	„	لِبْعَلٌ	Masc.	3rd.
„	„	لِنْعَلٌ	Fem.	„
لِنْعَلْنَ	„	لِنْعَلٌ	Masc.	2nd.
„	„	لِنْعَلٌ	Fem.	„
لِنْعَلْنَ	لِنْعَلَانِ	لَا فَعَلْ	Common.	1st.

IMPERATIVE

The Imperative is formed from the 2nd person of the aorist of the active voice, by omitting the sign of the aorist, and putting a *jazm* over the final letter, and prefixing a prosthetic *hamzah* called *hamzat-ul-wasl*, in case the first letter be quiescent. This *hamzah* has always *kasrah*, except when the second radical is moved with *dammah*, in which case, it is moved with *dammah*; as from <sup>أ</sup>تَضَرُّبُ we get <sup>أ</sup>اَضْرِبْ, and from <sup>أ</sup>تَنْصُرُ we get <sup>أ</sup>اَنْصُرْ. The *hamzat-ul-wasl* is, however, dropped in reading, when و - ف or any other particle or combining word precede the imperative, as <sup>أ</sup>نَمْ اَفْتَحْ - <sup>أ</sup>وَاَضْرِبْ - <sup>أ</sup>فَاَنْصُرْ.

When, however, the first letter after the omission of the sign of the aorist, is not quiescent, the imperative will be formed by only putting a *jazm* over the final letter, as from <sup>أ</sup>تُخْرِجُ we get <sup>أ</sup>خْرِجْ.

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Gender.
<sup>أ</sup> افْعَلُوا	<sup>أ</sup> افْعَلَا	<sup>أ</sup> افْعَلْ	Masc.
<sup>أ</sup> افْعَلْنَ	<sup>أ</sup> افْعَلَا	<sup>أ</sup> افْعَلِي	Fem.

Like the aorist, the imperative sometimes takes the paragogical *nūn*, as <sup>أ</sup>افْعَلْنِ.

## PARTICIPLES

(1) *Active Participle or Noun of Agency*

The Participle Active of the Triliteral Verb, is of the form of فَاعِلٌ, as in the paradigm.

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Gender.
فَاعِلُونَ	فَاعِلَانِ	فَاعِلٌ	Masc.
فَاعِلَاتٌ	فَاعِلَتَانِ	فَاعِلَةٌ	Fem.

In the other conjugations this participle is formed by changing the sign of the aorist of the *active* voice into, مِمْ (ميم مضموم) *mim* moved with *dammah*, and ending the word with a *tanween*, as from نَجْتَنِبُ we get مُجْتَنِبٌ.

(2) *Passive Participle or Noun of Object*

The Participle Passive of the Triliteral Verb, is of the form of مَفْعُولٌ as in the paradigm.

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	Gender.
مَفْعُولُونَ	مَفْعُولَانِ	مَفْعُولٌ	Masc.
مَفْعُولَاتٌ	مَفْعُولَتَانِ	مَفْعُولَةٌ	Fem.



In the other conjugations it is formed by changing the sign of the aorist of the *passive voice* to م (ميم مضوم) *mim* moved with *dammah*, giving *tanween* to the end, as from يَجْتَنِبُ we get مُجْتَنِبٌ.

*Obs.* The Arabic verbs have, as already stated, only two tenses, *viz.*, the Preterite or past tense and the Aorist which is common to the present and future. The other tenses are formed by means of auxiliary verbs, as كَانَ ضَرْبٌ "He had struck;" كَانَ يَضْرِبُ "He was striking;" etc. [*For the Moods and Tenses, vide Syntax.*]

#### CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS ACCORDING TO THE NUMBER OF RADICAL LETTERS

The root of the Arabic verb is ascertained by referring to the 3rd person singular masculine of the preterite (ماضي).

The Arabic roots are either trilateral or quadrilateral. The former are of more frequent occurrence than the latter. Again each of the trilateral and quadrilateral verbs is either primitive or derivative. Hence it follows that the Arabic verbs must be of four classes, *viz.* :—

- (I) Primitive Trilateral.
- (II) „ Quadrilateral.
- (III) Derivative Trilateral.
- (IV) „ Quadrilateral.

I. The Primitive Triliteral (ثَلَاثِي مُعْجَرِدٌ) is a verb whose 3rd person masculine singular of the preterite, consists of three radical letters, as نَصَرَ on the measure فَعَلَ<sup>1</sup>

II. The Primitive Quadriliteral (رُبَاعِي مُعْجَرِدٌ) is that which consists of only four radical letters, as دَخَرَ on the measure of فَعَّلَ.

III. The Derivative Triliteral (ثَلَاثِي مُرَبَّدٌ فِيهِ) is that which besides the three radical letters, has one or more servile letters, (حُرُوفُ زَائِدَةٌ) as اِجْتَنَبَ on the measure of اِفْعَلَ, where ج, ن, and ب are radical and the rest servile.

<sup>1</sup> To distinguish the serviles from the radicals, Grammarians use the verb فَعَلَ (he made) as paradigm of the triliteral verb. Hence, those letters which are in the positions of ف, ع, and ل, are taken as radical, while the remaining are considered servile; for instance, in اِجْتَنَبَ which is on the measure of اِفْعَلَ, the letters ج, ن, and ب, occur in the place of ف, ع, and ل, and are therefore radicals, the remaining letters, ا and ت being servile.

In trilaterals the first radical is called the فاء كَلِمَةٍ or the *Fā* of the root, the second the عين كَلِمَةٍ or the *ʿAin* of the root, and the third the لام كَلِمَةٍ, or the *Lām* of the root. In quadrilaterals, the model being فَعَّلَ, the first radical is called فاء كَلِمَةٍ, the second عين كَلِمَةٍ, the third لام اول or *Lām* the first and the fourth لام ثاني, or *Lām* the second. The servile letters are taken out of the letters composed in the word سَأَلْتُمُونَهَا.

IV. The Derivative Quadriliteral (رباعي مزیدہ) is a verb, which besides the four radical letters, contains one or more servile letters as تَسْرِبُ on the measure of تَفْعَلُ. In this the letter ت is servile, and the rest radical.

PRIMITIVE TRILITERAL

The preterite of the primitive triliteral has three forms, viz. :—

- (1) فَعَلَ, (2) فَعِلَ, (3) فَعُلَ

Again, the aorist of the first form (of preterite) is of three forms, viz. :—(1) يَفْعَلُ (2) يَفْعِلُ (3) يَفْعُلُ

That of the second form, of two forms, viz. :—(1) يَفْعُلُ (2) يَفْعِلُ

And that of the third form, of only one form, viz. :—يَفْعَلُ

Hence the primitive triliteral verbs have six forms, distinguished by the vowels of their medial radicals, the (عين كلمه) viz. :—

- |     |          |        |    |          |        |
|-----|----------|--------|----|----------|--------|
| (1) | يَفْعَلُ | فَعَلَ | as | يَضْرِبُ | ضَرَبَ |
| (2) | يَفْعِلُ | فَعِلَ | as | يَنْصُرُ | نَصَرَ |
| (3) | يَفْعُلُ | فَعُلَ | as | يَفْتَحُ | فَتَحَ |
| (4) | يَفْعِلُ | فَعِلَ | as | يَسْمَعُ | سَمِعَ |
| (5) | يَفْعِلُ | فَعِلَ | as | يَحْسِبُ | حَسِبَ |
| (6) | يَفْعُلُ | فَعُلَ | as | يَكْرُمُ | كَرُمَ |



(3) يَفْعَلُ فَعْلٌ

Active.			Passive.		
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.
فَعَّلَ	يَفْعَلُ	فَاعِلٌ	فُعِّلَ	يُفْعَلُ	مَفْعُولٌ
				اِفْعَلْ	
					فَعْلٌ to open

1 Verbs of this form have generally a *guttural* for their 2nd or 3rd radical.

(4) يَفْعَلُ فَعْلٌ

Active.			Passive.		
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.
فَعَّلَ	يَفْعَلُ	فَاعِلٌ	فُعِّلَ	يُفْعَلُ	مَفْعُولٌ
				اِفْعَلْ	
					فَعْلٌ to hear

## (5) يَفْعِلُ - فَعَّلَ

Active.		Passive.				Imperative.	Infinitive.
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.		
حَسِبَ	يَحْسِبُ	حَاسِبٌ	حَسِبَ	يَحْسِبُ	مَحْسُوبٌ	اَحْسِبْ	حَسِبَانٌ to compute

(6) يَفْعِلُ - فَعَّلَ <sup>1</sup>

Active.		Passive.			
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.
كَرَّم	يَكْرِم	كَرِيم	This form has no passive voice.		
				اَكْرِم	تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم
					تَكْرِم

<sup>1</sup> Verbs of this form are always intransitive and indicate a permanent or a naturally inherent quality; as كَرَّمُ He is fat; حَسْبُ He is beautiful. Hence this form has no passive voice nor the participle of the active voice, the place of the latter being supplied by the simple attributive adjective of the form of فَعِيلٌ

*Primitive Quadriliteral*

It has only one form, viz., (فَعَّلَ) يَفْعِلُ - يَفْعَلُ

Active.			Passive.				
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
فَعَّلَ	فَعَّلَ	مَفْعُولٌ	فُعِّلَ	يُفْعَلُ	مَفْعُولٌ	فَعِّلْ	لِفْعَالٍ
							to revolve

*Derivative Triliteral*

There are twelve forms of it, viz., (1) فَعَّلَ - يَفْعِلُ

Active.			Passive.			Imperative.	Infinitive.
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.		
مَرَّ	يَمُرُّ	مَارٌّ	مُرِّ	يُمرُّ	مُمرٌّ	مُرِّ	مَرًّا / تَصَرَّفَ to change







يَقْطُرُ ( يَقْطُرُ ) (6)

Active.			Passive.		
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.
اَقْطَرُ	يَقْطُرُ	مَقْطُرٌ	اَقْطَرُ	يَقْطُرُ	مَقْطُرٌ
			اَقْطُرْ	اَقْطُرْ	اَقْطُرْ
			to be cloven		

يَجْتَنِبُ . اِجْتَنَبْ ( اِجْتَنَبْ ) (7)

Active.			Passive.		
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.
اَجْتَنَبَ	يَجْتَنِبُ	مَجْتَنِبٌ	اَجْتَنَبَ	يَجْتَنِبُ	مَجْتَنِبٌ
			اَجْتَنِبْ	اَجْتَنِبْ	اَجْتَنِبْ
			to avoid		



Active.			Passive.				
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
أَدْعَمَ	يَدْعِمُ	مَدْعِمٌ	أَدْعِمَ	يَدْعِمُ	مَدْعِمٌ	أَدْعِمْ - اذْعِمِ	اَدْعِمُ دَعِيمٌ to be very black

Active.			Passive.			Infinitive.
Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	Preterite.	Aorist.	Participle.	
سَمِعْتُ اعْلَمْتُ	سَمِعْتُ يَعْلَمُ	سَمِعٌ مَعْلُومٌ	سَمِعْتُ اعْلَمْتُ	سَمِعْتُ يَعْلَمُ	سَمِعٌ مَعْلُومٌ	سَمْعًا اعْلَامًا to mount a camel by the neck







## GENERAL SIGNIFICATIONS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE PRIMITIVE TRILITERAL FORMS

### فَعَلَ يَقْعِلُ

The general tendency of this form is transitive as **عَسَلَ**, he washed (aorist **يَقْسِلُ**) ; **جَذَبَ**, he absorbed (aorist **يَجْذِبُ**).

### فَعَلَ يَقْعِلُ

The tendency of this form is intransitive, especially when its infinitive is of the measure **فُعُولٌ**, as **خَرَجَ**, he came out ; infinitive **خُرُوجٌ**, to come out ; yet transitive verbs of this form are not very rare either, as **نَصَرَ**, he helped ; infinitive **نُصْرٌ**, or **نُصْرَةٌ**.

### فَعَلَ يَقْعِلُ

This form comprises such verbs as signify sickness, cure, grief, cheer, colour, deformity, and a description of an accidental personal quality, as **مَرَضَ**, he became sick ; **فَرِحَ**, he was glad ; **بَرِيَ**, he was cured ; **حَزِنَ**, he became sorrowful ; **كَدِرَ**, he was dark ; **عَوِرَ**, he became blind of one eye ; **عَرِجَ**, he became lame ; **بَلَغَ**, he had open eye-brows.

### فَعَلَ يَقْعِلُ

This form has a literal peculiarity, *viz.*, any verb formed on this measure must have a guttural letter for its second or third



radical, as رَهَنَ, he pledged, (aorist يَرْهَنُ) ; مَنَعَ, he prohibited, (aorist يَمْنَعُ).

But it must be borne in mind that it is not necessary for every verb, having a guttural letter for its second and last radical to be of this form, hence it may be of any other form also, as صَلَحَ, he became good, (aorist يَصْلَحُ) which is formed on فَعْلَلُ.

The verbs رَكُنَ, he inclined, (aorist يَرُكُنُ) أَبَى (for ابى), he declined, (aorist يَأْبَى for أَبَايَ) are irregularly formed on the above model, although they have no guttural for their second or third letter.

### فَعْلَلُ يَقْعَلُ

Verbs belonging to this form are such intransitive verbs as indicate a permanent or a naturally inherent quality, as كَرُمَ, he became noble ; جَسَمَ, he became fat ; حَسُنَ, he was beautiful ; قُبِحَ, he was ugly ; نَحَفَ, he was lean. Also sometimes like the fourth, it has verbs signifying colour or personal description, as سَمُرَ, he became straw-coloured ; عَجَفَ, he became lean.

### فَعْلَلُ يَقْعَلُ

The verbs of this form are only few and limited in number, viz.,—

حَسِبَ, he reckoned ; نِعِمَ, he lived pleasantly ; بَيَّسَ, he was bold ; يَلَّسَ, he despaired ; وَثِقَ, he loved ; وَثِقَ, he was firm ;

وَقِيَ , it became agreeable ; وَرِثَ , he inherited ; وَغَرَ , he became angry ; وَلَعَ , he was fascinated ; وَلِعَ , he eagerly desired ; وَلَعَ , he lapped water with his tongue ; وَجَرَ , he conceived enmity ; وَهِنَ , he was weak ; وَزِقَ , he perished ; وَصَبَ , he was ill ; وَغِمَ , he wished prosperity to such a one.

### GENERAL SIGNIFICATIONS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE DERIVATIVE TRILITERAL FORMS

#### تَفْعِيلٌ

1. The general tendency of this form is causative ; thus عَلِمَ , he knew ; عَلَّمَ , he caused to know, or taught.

Again when a neuter or intransitive verb is brought to this form, it becomes active or transitive, as فَرِحَ , he became glad ; becomes فَرَّحَ , he gladdened or made glad.

2. (تصيير) The agent making the object bear or possess a thing expressed by the primitive, as وَثَرْتُ الْقَوْسَ , I strung the bow, or made it bear a وَثْرَ or string.

It sometimes implies the agent himself possessing a thing signified by the root ; as نُورَ الشَّجَرِ , the tree blossomed or bore نور , the blossom. This peculiarity is termed by our Grammarians صَيْرُورَةٌ .

3. (سلب) Removal of a thing (expressed by the primitive) from the object, as جَلَدْتُ الشَّاةَ , I skinned the goat or removed جلد the skin from it.

4. (بلوغ) The agent reaching or approaching the place, or entering upon a period of time, or doing an act during a time expressed by the primitive, as **عَمَّقَ**, he reached the **عُمُقُ**, depth ; **شَرَّقَ**, he approached **شَرْقُ**, the east ; **عَلَسَ**, he went at **عَلَسُ**, before break of dawn.

5. (الباس مأخذ) The agent dressing the object with the sense of the primitive, as **قَمَّصْتُ زَيْدًا**, I dressed Zaid with a **قميص**, shirt.

6. (تخليط) The agent mixing or staining the object with a thing signified by the primitive, as **ذَهَبْتُ السِّيفَ**, I gilded the sword with **ذَهَبُ**, gold.

7. (تعويل) The agent converting the object to the sense of the primitive, as **نُصِّرْتُ زَيْدًا**, I converted Zaid to **نصرانية**, Christianity.

8. (نسبت بمأخذ) <sup>1</sup> Ascribing the sense of the primitive to the object, as **كُفِّرْتُ زَيْدًا**, I ascribed **كفر**, infidelity, to Zaid, or called him an infidel.

9. (مبالغة) Intensive signification, as **كَسَرَ**, he broke, and **كَسَّرَ**, he broke to pieces ; **فَرَّقَ**, he separated, and **فَرَّقَّقَ**, he dispersed.

10. (قصر) Abbreviation, i.e., sometimes a verb is formed out of a sentence, as **هَلَّلَ**, he uttered **لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ**, there is no God but God.

11. (ابتداء) Originality, i.e., a root originally comes in this form without coming in any of the primitive trilateral form, as **كَلَّمَ**, he talked, which has no primitive trilateral verb.

## مُفَاعَلَةٌ

It is generally transitive, and denotes a reciprocal action, as ضَارِبٌ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا, Zaid beat Amr, implying at the same time that Amr also beat Zaid in return. Here, though in construction the one stands in the nominative case and the other in the objective, but in reality both partake of the action as agent and object.

Sometimes it bears an intransitive or a transitive sense without reciprocity, as سَافَرَ زَيْدٌ, Zaid travelled ; بَاعَدْتُ زَيْدًا, I removed Zaid ; ضَاعَفْتُ الشَّيْءَ, I doubled the thing.

## إِفْعَالٌ

Like the form *taf'il*, it generally gives a causal or active signification to the primitive, as from عَلِمَ, he knew, we get أَعْلَمَ, he informed ; دَخَبَ, he went ; أَذْهَبَ, he made (another) go, or he brought. Sometimes, though very rarely, when a transitive verb is used in this form, it becomes intransitive, as حَمِدَ, he praised, becomes أَحْمَدُ, he became praiseworthy.

Beside the above. it has the following significations : —

1. (مِيرورة) 'The agent's becoming bearer or possessor of the thing implied by the root, as الْبَنَى الْإِبِلَ, the she-camel became milch, i.e., became bearer of لبن, milk.

Sometimes it denotes the agent's becoming possessor or bearer of a thing which bears the sense of the primitive ; or bearing or possessing a thing in the season implied by the primitive, as

أَجْرَبَ زَيْدٌ, Zaid became possessor of a camel, which suffers from جرب, itch ; أَخْرَجَتِ الشَّاةُ, the sheep brought forth young ones at the season of خريف, autumn.

2. (تصيير) The agent's making the object possessor or bearer of a thing expressed by the primitive, as أَنْصَلْتُ السَّهْمَ, I made the arrow bearer of نصال, the point of an arrow, i.e., I pointed it.

3. (تعريض) Bearing the object to a place connected with the sense of the primitive, as أَبَاعَ الْفَرَسَ (for أَبَيْعَ), he brought the horse to the place of بيع, sale.

4. (وجدان) The agent's finding a thing qualified with the sense of the root, as أَبْخَلْتُ زَيْدًا, I found Zaid qualified with بخل, stinginess, i.e., I found him a miser.

5. (سلب) as أَقْدَيْتُ عَيْنَهُ, I removed قَدَى, a mote, from his eyes.

6. (إعطای ماخذ) The agent's giving another, a thing expressed by the primitive, as أَشَوَيْتُ زَيْدًا, I gave Zaid شوى, a piece of roast.

7. (بلوغ) as أَعْرَقَ زَيْدٌ, Zaid reached عراق, Irak ; اصبح, he entered upon the time of (صبح) morning.

8. (حينونة) The agent's approaching the time or season of undergoing the action implied by the primitive, as أَحْصَدُ الرَّزْعَ, the harvest approached the season of حصاد, reaping.

9. (مبالغة) Intensity, as أَمْرًا تَنْخُلُ, the date tree brought forth fruits in abundance.

10. (ابتدا), as اشفق, he was fearful.

Sometimes (though very rare) it has a passive or submissive sense, as ابشر, he became pleased.

### تَعَلَّ

This form generally has a passive, reflexive or submissive sense, as عَلِمَ, he knew ; تَعَلَّمَ, he was taught, or he learnt ; تَكَسَّرَ, it was broken.

Beside this it has the following significations:—

1. (تَكَلَّفَ) Adopting the sense of the primitive by affectation, as تَعَرَّبَ, he affected to be an (عرب), Arab.

2. (تَجَنَّبَ) Avoiding the sense of the primitive, as تَنَزَّاهُ, he avoided sin (أثم).

3. (لبس مأخذ) The agent's dressing himself with the sense of the primitive, as تَقَمَّصَ, he dressed himself with a (قميص) shirt.

4. (تَعَمَّلَ) To apply or use the thing expressed by primitive, as تَدَهَّنَ, he applied or used (دهن) oil ; تَتَرَسَّ, he used (ترس) the shield, or wielded it.

5. (اتخاذ) Adopting the sense of the primitive or making or using a thing like it, or putting a thing in it, as تَوَبَّخَ الخشبَ, he used wood to make it into a (باب) door or shutter ; تَوَسَّدَ الحجرَ, he used (حجر) a stone as (وسادة) a pillow ; تَابَطَ الثوبَ, he put (ثوب) the clothes under his (ابط) arm.

6. (تدریج) To do an action gradually, as تَجَرَّعَ, he drunk water by (جرعة) draughts or gradually.

7. (نُحَوِّلَ) Conversion into the sense of the primitive or resemblance to it, as نُكَلِّمُ, he was converted to (نَصْرَانِيَّة) Christianity ; نُبَحَّرُ, he resembled (بَحْر) the ocean.

8. (مَبْرُورَةٌ) To become possessor of a thing implied by the primitive, as نُمَوِّلُ, he became possessor of (مَالٌ) property.

9. (اِبْتَدَا) <sup>1</sup> as نُكَلِّمُ, he talked.

### تُفَاعَلُ

It generally denotes reciprocity, co-partnership or association, as تُقَاتِلُ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُوهُ, Zaid and Amr made war with each other. It differs from the second form (مُفَاعَلَةٌ) in this, that in تَفَاعَلَ both the agent and object are nominatives while in مُفَاعَلَةٌ one is nominative and the other objective, as قَاتَلَ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا, Zaid fought with Amr ; تُقَاتِلُ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُوهُ, Zaid and Amr both fought with each other.

It also denotes the agent's pretending to have the sense of the primitive, by affectation, as نُمَارِضُ, he feigned sickness from

<sup>1</sup> By this term is meant, that a root is used in any of the derivative forms without being used in the primitive one ; but the same root may be used in other derivative forms also, for instance تَكَلَّمَ, تَكَلَّمَ and so بَارَكَ بَارَكَ are of the same root, yet they have this peculiarity of اِبْتَدَا, because this root is not used in any primitive form. Nor does it matter if the same root is used in a different sense in the primitive form, as اَشْفَقَ, he was fearful, which has the peculiarity of اِبْتَدَا because شَفَقَ, he was kind (the primitive form) has a different sense.

مرض, sickness. It has also the peculiarity of ابتدا, as تبارك, may he be hallowed.

Obs. When the verbal root of تَفَاعَلَ and تَفَعَّلَ begins with ت, ث, ج, د, ذ, ر, ز, س, ش, ص, ط, ظ, the servile (ت) of the form is sometimes optionally changed into that letter, and then the two letters are doubled, in which case the first letter being quiescent, a prosthetic hamzah (همزة الوصل) is added, as تَطَهَّرَ for تَطَهَّرَ; تَذَكَّرَ for تَذَكَّرَ; تَنَاقَلَ for تَنَاقَلَ; تَسَاقَطَ for تَسَاقَطَ; تَزَيَّنَ for تَزَيَّنَ; تَدَكَّرَ for تَدَكَّرَ.

### انْفَعَلَ

This has always a passive signification, and hence it is seldom used in the passive form, as كَسَرَ, he broke, and انكسر, it was broken.

1. انْطَلَقَ, as ابتدا, he walked.

### اِفْتَعَلَ

Generally speaking, it denotes the passive or reflexive sense of the primitive trilateral root; thus فَرَّقَ, he divided, and اِفْتَرَقَ, it went to pieces.

Beside this it has the following significations:—

1. اِحْتَجَرَ زَيْدٌ (اِتَّخَذَ) (حجرة), Zaid has made a (حجرة) room.
2. اِكْتَسَبَ الْعِلْمَ (تَصَرَّفَ) To perform an action by exertion, as اِكْتَسَبَ الْعِلْمَ, he acquired knowledge by exertion.

8. (تَغَيَّرَ) The agent's performing an action for himself, as اِكْتَالُ الشَّعِيرِ (اِكْتَنَلَ لِنَفْسِهِ), he measured barley for himself.



4. (ابتدا) as اسْتَمَّ, he kissed the black stone.

Sometimes it denotes reciprocity like تفاعل, as اِخْتَصَمَ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرُو, Zaid and Amr contested with each other ; اِقْتَتَلَ النَّاسُ, the people fought with each other.

Again, a verbal peculiarity of this form is this that the servile (ت) of اِنْتَعَال is changed into (د) when the first letter of the root is د, ذ, and ز, in which case these letters sometimes coalesce together as اِذْكُر, or اذكر, for اذذكر (for اذتكر), changing the (د) into (ذ) or (د) into (د); and اِزْجُر for ازنجر without coalescing together. When the first radical is one of the letters ص, ض, ط, ظ, the (ت) is changed into (ط); as اضْطَبِّر, for اِضْطَبِّر, اضطرِب, for اِصْطَبِّر. In this case also sometimes the two letters coalesce together, as اِظْلَمَ for اِظْلَمَ (for اِظْلَمَ) اِظْلَمَ.

اِسْتَفْعَال

Its signification is generally asking, wishing, or demanding the state or action, expressed by the primitive; thus عَفَّرَ, he pardoned; اِسْتَغْفَرَ, he begged pardon.

Beside this, it has the following significations:—

1. (لياقة) Liability of undergoing the sense of the root; as اِسْتَرْقَعَ الثَّوبُ, the clothes became fit for being patched.

2. (حسبان) The agent's supposing the object to be qualified with the sense of the root; اِسْتَحْسَنَ زَيْدًا, he supposed Zaid to be (حسن) good.

3. (تحويل) Conversion or change into the sense of the root, as اسْتَحْجَرَ الطينُ, the clay was changed into (حجر) stone.

4. (اتخاذ) The agent's adopting the object as a thing implied by the primitive, as اسْتَوطنَ القريةَ, he adopted the village as his (وطن) domicile.

5. (وجدان) The agent's finding the object qualified with the sense of the root, as اسْتَكْرَمَنَّهُ, I found him generous, i.e., qualified with (كرم) generosity.

6. (قصر) or abbreviation, as اسْتَرْجَعَ, he uttered the words إِنَّا لِلَّهِ وَإِلَيْهِ رَاجِعُونَ, verily we are of God and to Him we shall return.

إِفْعَالٌ and إِفْعِلَالٌ.

These two forms designate colour and deformity, as اِحْمَرَّ, he became red ; اِدْهَمَّ, he became black ; اِعْوَرَ, he became one-eyed ; اِضْجَمَّ, he was wry-faced.

إِفْعِلَالٌ and إِفْعِوَالٌ.

These are of rare occurrence and are only employed to heighten the intensity of the primitive ; thus خَشِنَ, it was harsh, اِحْشَوْشَنَ, it was very harsh ; اَجْلَوَدَ البعيرُ, the camel ran with great velocity.

Obs. The form إِفْعِوَالٌ has so few verbs that in the holy Qurán no verb of that form occurs ; besides, the verbs of this form are all (مقتضب) i.e., have no primitive forms.

GENERAL SIGNIFICATIONS AND PECULIARITIES OF THE PRIMITIVE  
AND DERIVATIVE QUADRILITERAL VERBS

فَعَّلَ.

The general tendency of this form is intransitive, though some are also transitive, as **نَحَرَ**, he rolled ; **أَفْخَر**, he was proud.

All the verbs used in this form are exclusively of Perfect (مضارع) or Surd (مضارع) kinds, no Imperfect (معتل) or Hamzated (مهموز) verbs are to be found in this form.

The verbs signifying sounds and movement are generally of this form, as **زَلَزَلَهُ**, to shake as in earthquake ; **فَلْفَلَهُ**, to sound or move ; **بَقْبَقَهُ**, sounding (as water when poured into a jug) ; **جَجَجَهُ**, sounding (as a mill when grinding).

Besides, it has the following significations :—

1. (عمل) Making or approaching a thing expressed by the primitive, as **قَرَمَصَ**, he made **قَرَمَاص**, a hole for catching pigeons, or he entered it.

2. (مماثلة) The agent's assimilating himself with the sense of the root, as **عَقَرَ الشَّيْءَ**, he clung to the thing like **عَقْرَب**, a scorpion.

3. (قصر) Abbreviation, as **بَسَمَلَ**, he uttered the words **بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ**, in the name of God most compassionate and merciful ; **حَمْدَل**, he said **الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ**, praise be to God ; **حَوْلَقَ**, he uttered **لَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ**, there is no power and no strength save in God.

تَفَعَّلَ.

This form generally agrees in signification with the fourth of the derivative trilateral verbs, as تَسَلَّطَ, he made himself Sultan, or he acted as if he were Sultan.

اِفْعَلَّالَ.

It corresponds with the sixth of the derivative trilateral verbs, bearing an intransitive signification, as اِثْعَنْجَرَ, it flowed.

اِفْعَلَّالَ.

This answers to the eighth of the derivative trilateral verbs ; it is intransitive and expresses intensity, as اِزْعَبَّ السَّيْلُ, the torrent was very great.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS

Verbs and even Nouns are divided into four classes, termed ( *صحيح* ) *Perfect*, ( *مهموز* ) *Hamzated*, ( *معتل* ) *Infirm or Imperfect*, and ( *مضاعف* ) *Surd*.

The *Perfect* is one which has only strong consonants for its radical letters, as نَصَرَ, he helped.

The *Imperfect* is that which has one or more infirm letters for its radical, as وَعَدَ, he promised ; قَالَ (for قَوْلٌ), he said ; دَعَا (for دَعْوٌ), he called.

The *Hamzated* is that which has a *hamzah* for one of its radicals, as أَخَذَ, he caught ; سَأَلَ, he asked ; قَرَأَ, he read.

The *Surd* is one whose 2nd and 3rd radicals are homogeneous letters, as مَدَّ (for مَدَد) he drew, both coalescing on certain occasions by a *tashdid* ( \* ).

# INFIRM OR IMPERFECT VERBS

The Infirm verbs are of three classes, viz., ( مثال ) Simile, ( اجوف ) Concave, and ( ناقص ) Defective.

The Simile is a verb which has for its first radical one of the infirm letters, as وَعَدَ, he promised; يَسَّرَ, it was easy.

The Concave is a verb of which the medial radical is an infirm letter, as قَالَ, he said, (for قَوْل) بَاعَ, he sold (for بَيْع).

The Defective is that of which the last radical is an infirm letter, as دَعَا (for دَعْو).

Such verbs as have any two of the infirm letters for their radicals are called by the Arabic Grammarians ( لَفِيف ) *Involutes*, and they are of two kinds, viz. :— ( لَفِيف مَفْرُوق ) the *separate involute*, and ( لَفِيف مَقْرُون ) the *conjunct involute*.

The former are those which have و and ي for the first and last radicals, as وَقَى, for وَفَى, he guarded.

The latter are those which have و and ي for the second and third radicals, as شَوَى, for شَوَّى, he roasted.

# SIMILE ( مثال )

The preterite of the primitive triliteral verbs of this kind, is exactly like that of the primitive triliterals of the regular or perfect verbs, as وَعَدَا وَعَدَا وَعَدَا, etc.

But there are some changes in their aorist and imperative, as well as in some of their derivative forms, which are described below :—

1st. The first radical *و* is dropped in the aorist of the active voice and imperative of the triliteral, when the medial radical of the aorist is moved with *kasrah*, as from *وَعَدَ* we get the aorist *يَعِدُ* for *يُوعِدُ*, and the imperative *عِدْ* for *اُوعِدْ*, according to Rule 1 of the Appendix. But when it is moved with *fathah* or *dammah*, the *و* is retained, as from *وَجَلَّ* we get the aorist *يُوجِلُّ*.

The *و* may also be dropped from the infinitive, leaving *ë* in the end as a compensation for the lost radical, as *عَدَّ* for *وَعَدَ*, *وَصَفَّ* for *وَصَفَّ*, etc.

In a few verbs, however, of which the eight following are of common occurrence, the radical *و* is thrown away from the aorist and imperative, although the medial radicals of the aorist or imperative thereof are moved with *fathah*, viz.,—

دَعَّ	يَدَعُّ	وَدَعَّ	He left.
ذَرَّ	يَذَرُّ	وَذَرَّ	He left.
زَعَّ	يَزَعُّ	وَزَعَّ	He restrained.
سَعَّ	يَسَعُّ	وَسَعَّ	He became wide.
ضَعَّ	يَضَعُّ	وَضَعَّ	He placed.
طَأَّ	يَطَأُّ	وَطَأَّ	He trampled upon.

قَعَّ	يَقَعُّ	وَقَعَ	He fell.
عَبَّ	يَهَبُّ	وَهَبَّ	He gave.

The preterites of وَقَعَ and وَذَرَ are obsolete.

2nd. In the form of اِنْتَعَلَ, the first radical و or ي is changed into ت, and then coalesces with the ت of اِنْتَعَلَ, as اِنْتَقَدَّ, for اِنْتَقَدَّ. اِنْتَعِظْ for اِنْتَعِظْ, etc. (Rule 2, Appendix).

3rd. The first radical ي after the sign of the aorist moved with *ḍammah* and after *mim* moved with *ḍammah* of the participles is changed into و (Rule 3, Appendix) as from اَيَسَّرُ, we get اَيَسَّرُ, for اَيَسَّرُ, and اَيَسَّرُ for اَيَسَّرُ.

4th. The first radical و is changed into ي in the infinitive of the forms of اِفْعَالٌ, and اِسْتِفْعَالٌ (Rule 3, Appendix), as اِيْعَاشٌ and اِسْتِوْعَاشٌ, for اَوْعَاشٌ and اِسْتَوْعَاشٌ.

### CONCAVE VERB (اجرف)

The verbs of this class undergo changes in almost all the inflections of their tenses. In the primitive trilateral, when the letter و comes as the medial radical, the verbs are generally of the forms of فَعْلٌ يَفْعَلُ - فَعْلٌ يَفْعَلُ.

Conjugation of the Concave verb with و for the medial radical, of the form of فَعْلٌ يَفْعَلُ.

Inf. اَلْقَوْلُ, to say

Preterite of the Active Voice

قَالَ	قَالَ	قَالَ	3rd Masculine.
-------	-------	-------	----------------

قُلْنَ	قَاكَا	قَاكْتُ	3rd Feminine.
قُلْتُمْ	قُلْتُمَا	قُلْتُ	2nd Masculine.
قُلْتُنَّ	قُلْتُمَا	قُلْتِ	2nd Feminine.
قُلْنَا	قُلْنَا	قُلْتُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form of قَالٌ was قَوْلٌ. The movable و being preceded by a *fathah*, is changed into *alif*, (Rule 4, Appendix).

Such is the case with all the inflections, but in قُلْنِ, etc., the *alif*, being itself a quiescent letter, and followed by the quiescent *lám*. is dropped, to avoid the junction of two quiescent letters, (which is always inadmissible) giving *dammah* to the first radical (Rule 6, Appendix).

#### *Preterite of the Passive Voice*

قِيلُوا	قِيلَا	قِيلَ	3rd Masculine.
قُلْنَ	قِيلْتَا	قِيلْتُ	3rd Feminine.
قُلْتُمْ	قِيلْتُمَا	قِيلْتُ	2nd Masculine.
قُلْتُنَّ	قِيلْتُمَا	قِيلْتِ	2nd Feminine.
قُلْنَا	قِيلْنَا	قِيلْتُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* قِيلٌ was originally قَوْلٌ. The *kasrah* of the و being thrown back to the preceding letter (which then loses its own vowel *dammah*), changes the و into ي, (Rule 6, Appendix). Such



is the case with all the inflections as far as قِيلْنَا. In the inflections from قُلْنِ to قُلْنَا, the original form was قُولُنْ etc., which becomes قُلْنِ etc., by dropping the و (Rule 7, Appendix) and thus the passive forms of these coincide apparently with the active.

*Aorist of the Active Voice*

يَقُولُونَ	يَقُولَانِ	يَقُولُ	3rd Masculine.
يَقُلْنَ	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولُ	3rd Feminine.
تَقُولُونَ	نَقُولَانِ	نَقُولُ	2nd Masculine.
تَقُلْنَ	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولِينَ	2nd Feminine.
نَقُولُ	نَقُولُ	أَقُولُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form of يَقُولُ was يَقُولُ; the *damma* of و is thrown back to the preceding quiescent letter. Such is the case with other inflections, but in يَقُلْنَ and تَقُلْنَ the original forms of which were يَقُولُنْ and تَقُولُنْ, the و being followed by the quiescent *lām* is dropped (Rule 8, Appendix).

*Aorist of the Passive Voice*

يُقَالُونَ	يُقَالَانِ	يُقَالُ	3rd Masculine.
يُقُلْنَ	تُقَالَانِ	تُقَالُ	3rd Feminine.
تُقَالُونَ	تُقَالَانِ	تُقَالُ	2nd Masculine.
تُقُلْنَ	تُقَالَانِ	تُقَالِينَ	2nd Feminine.
نُقَالُ	نُقَالُ	أُقَالُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* يُقَالُ was originally يَقُولُ. The *fathah* of the و being thrown back to the preceding letter, the و is changed into *alif* (Rule 8, Appendix). Such is the case with all the inflections, but in يُقَلْنَ and تُقَلْنَ (which were originally يَقُولْنَ and تُقُولْنَ) the *alif* is dropped, to avoid the junction of the two quiescent letters.

*Obs.* When لم and other particles requiring *jazm* are prefixed to the aorist, the و is dropped in both genders of the 3rd and the 2nd Singular, as well as in the 1st person of both voices; as, لَمْ يَقُلْ, instead of لَمْ يَقُولْ, and لَمْ يَقُلْ for لَمْ يَقَالْ, etc.

#### Imperative

قُولُوا	قُولَا	قُلْ	Masculine.
قُلْنَ	قُولَا	قُولِي	Feminine.

*Remarks.* قُلْ was originally أَقُولُ, of the measure of أَتَمُصُّ. The *ḍammah* of the و being thrown back to the preceding letter (Rule 8, Appendix), the letter و is dropped, avoid the junction of two quiescents, and then the first radical being moved, sets aside the prosthetic *hamzah* (همزة الوصل). In قُولَا, etc., the next letter (ل) being movable, the و is retained.

#### Participle of the Active Voice

قَائِلٌ	قَائِلَانِ	قَائِلْ	Masculine.
قَائِلَاتٌ	قَائِلَتَانِ	قَائِلَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The original form of قَائِلٌ, etc., was قَاوِلٌ, etc. The و is changed into *hamzah*, according to (Rule 9, Appendix).

*Participle of the Passive Voice*

مَقُولُونَ	مَقُولَانِ	مَقُولٌ	Masculine.
مَقُولَاتٌ	مَقُولَتَانِ	مَقُولَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The original form of مَقُولٌ was مَقُوْلٌ. The *dammah* of the first و being transferred to the preceding quiescent letter, (Rule 8, Appendix), one of the two quiescent *wāws* is dropped, to avoid the junction of two quiescents.

The concave verb with و in the form of فَعُلَ يَفْعُلُ, is conjugated exactly in the same way as the preceding, as—

طَالَ طَالًا طَالُوا.....

يَطْوُلُ يَطْوُلَانِ يَطْوُلُونَ.....

The difference, however, lies in this, that the original form of طَالٌ was طَوُلٌ, the movable و being changed into *alif* on account of its being preceded by *fathah*.

The conjugation of the concave verb with و of the form of فَعُلَ يَفْعُلُ is as follows :

## الخوف, to fear

*Preterite of the Active Voice*

خَافُوا	خَافَا	خَافَ	3rd Masculine.
خَفْنَ	خَفْنَا	خَافَتْ	3rd Feminine.
خَفْنِمُ	خَفْنِمَا	خَفْتُ	2nd Masculine.
خَفْنِي	خَفْنِي	خَفْتِ	2nd Feminine.
خَفْنَا	خَفْنَا	خَفْتُ	1st Common.

The original form *خَوِفُ* becomes *خَافَ*, (Rule 4, Appendix). This is the case with all the inflections, but in *خَفْنَ* etc., which were originally *خَوْنُ*, etc., the *و* being changed into *alif* and then dropped, the first radical receives *kasrah* by (Rule 5, Appendix).

*Preterite of the Passive Voice*

خِيفُوا	خِيفَا	خِيفَ	3rd Masculine.
خِفْنَ	خِفْنَا	خِيفَتْ	3rd Feminine.
خِفْنِمُ	خِفْنِمَا	خِفْتُ	2nd Masculine.
خِفْنِي	خِفْنِي	خِفْتِ	2nd Feminine.
خِفْنَا	خِفْنَا	خِفْتُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form *خَوِفُ* becomes *خِيفَ* (Rule 6, Appendix). Such is the case with all the inflections, but in *خِفْنَ*, etc., which were originally *خَوْنُ*, etc., the *و* is dropped after the *kasrah* has been transferred to the preceding letter, to avoid the junction of avoid two quiescents (Rule 7, Appendix).

*Aorist of the Active Voice*

يُخَافُونَ	يُخَافَانِ	يُخَافُ	3rd Masculine.
يُخَفْنَ	نُخَافَانِ	تُخَافُ	3rd Feminine.
تُخَافُونَ	تُخَافَانِ	تُخَافُ	2nd Masculine.
تُخَفْنَ	نُخَافَانِ	نُخَافِينَ	2nd Feminine.
نُخَافُ	نُخَافُ	أُخَافُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form of يُخَافُ was يُخَفُّوْ. The *fathah* of the و is transferred to the preceding quiescent letter (Rule 8, Appendix), and the و is changed into *alif*, because it is preceded by the *fathah* (Rule 4, Appendix). This is the case with all the inflections, but in يُخَفْنَ and نُخَفْنَ, after the transfer of the *fathah*, و is dropped, to avoid the junction of two quiescent letters.

*Aorist of the Passive Voice*

..... يُخَافُ يُخَافَانِ يُخَافُونَ

The same remarks which apply to the Aorist of the Active Voice, are applicable to the Aorist of the Passive Voice.

*Imperative*

خَافُوا	خَافَا	خَفْ	Masculine.
خَفْنَ	خَافَا	خَافِي	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The original form of خَفَّ was إِخْفُفَ. The *fathah* of the و being transferred to the preceding quiescent letter (Rule 8, Appendix), the و is changed into *alif* and this *alif* being followed by the quiescent ف, is dropped to avoid their junction. And the first radical being movable, supersedes the necessity of the prosthetic *hamzah* همزة الوصل. In خَافَا, etc., the *alif* is retained, as the next letter being movable, there is no junction of two quiescents.

*Participle of the Active Voice*

خَائِفُونَ	خَائِفَانِ	خَائِفٌ	Masculine.
خَائِفَاتٌ	خَائِفَتَانِ	خَائِفَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The same remarks which have been made on قَائِلٌ, etc., are applicable here.

*Participle of the Passive Voice*

مُخَوِّفُونَ	مُخَوِّفَانِ	مُخَوِّفٌ	Masculine.
مُخَوِّفَاتٌ	مُخَوِّفَتَانِ	مُخَوِّفَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The remarks on مَقُولٌ etc., are applicable here.

*Concave Verbs with ي*

When the letter ي is the medial radical, the verbs are generally of the forms of فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ and فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ.

Conjugations of the Concave verbs with ي in the form of فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ.

البيع to Sell.

*Preterite of the Active Voice*

بَاعُوا	بَاعَا	بَاعَ	3rd Masculine.
بِعْنَ	بَاعَتَا	بَاعَتْ	3rd Feminine.
بِعْتُمُ	بِعْتُمَا	بِعْتُ	2nd Masculine.
بِعْتُنَّ	بِعْتُمَا	بِعْتُ	2nd Feminine.
بِعْنَا	بِعْنَا	بِعْتُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* بَاعَ was originally بَعَّ. The movable ي is changed into *alif*, according to Rule 4, Appendix. This is the case with all the inflections, but in بِعْنَ, etc., which were originally بِيْعْنَ etc., the *alif* is dropped, to avoid the junction of two quiescents, leaving a *kasrah* on the first radical, according to Rule 5, Appendix.

*Preterite of the Passive Voice*

بِيعُوا	بِيعَا	بِيعَ	3rd Masculine.
بِِعْنَ	بِيعَتَا	بِيعَتْ	3rd Feminine.
بِيعْتُمُ	بِيعْتُمَا	بِيعْتُ	2nd Masculine.
بِيعْتُنَّ	بِيعْتُمَا	بِيعْتُ	2nd Feminine.
بِيعْنَا	بِيعْنَا	بِيعْتُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* بِيعَ was originally بِيْعَ, the *kasrah* of the ي is thrown back to the preceding letter (which then loses its own vowel

*dammah*) according to Rule 6, Appendix. In *يعن* etc., which were originally *يُيعُن* etc., the *ي* is dropped, to prevent the junction of two quiescent letters (Rule 7, Appendix).

*Aorist of the Active Voice*

يُيَعُونَ	يُيَعَانِ	يُيَعِ	3rd Masculine.
يُيَعُنْ	تُيَعَانِ	تُيَعِ	3rd Feminine.
تُيَعُونَ	تُيَعَانِ	تُيَعِ	2nd Masculine.
تُيَعُنْ	تُيَعَانِ	تُيَعِينَ	2nd Feminine.
نُيَعِ	نُيَعِ	أُيَعِ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form of *يُيَعِ* was *يُيَعِ*. The *kasrah* of the *ي* is thrown back to the preceding quiescent letter (according to Rule 8, Appendix). In *يُيَعُنْ* and *تُيَعُنْ*, however, the *ي* is dropped, to prevent the junction of two quiescents.

*Obs.* When the *لَمْ* and other particles requiring *jazm* are prefixed, the *ي* is dropped from both the genders of the 3rd person singular, the masculine singular of the 2nd person, and the 1st person as *لَمْ يَعِ* - *لَمْ تَعِ* - *لَمْ أَعِ*.

*Aorist of the Passive Voice*

يُبَاعُونَ	يُبَاعَانِ	يُبَاعِ	3rd Masculine.
يُبَاعُنْ	تُبَاعَانِ	تُبَاعِ	3rd Feminine.



تُبَاعُونَ	تُبَاعَانِ	تُبَاعُ	2nd Masculine.
تُبَعْنَ	تُبَاعَانِ	تُبَاعَيْنِ	2nd Feminine.
تُبَاعُ	تُبَاعُ	أُبَاعُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* يُبَاعُ was originally يُبِيعُ. The *fathah* of the ي being thrown back to the preceding quiescent letter (according to Rule 8, Appendix), the ي is changed into *alif*, but in تُبَعْنَ and تُبَعْنَ which were يُبِيعْنَ and يُبِيعْنَ, the *alif* is dropped, to avoid the junction of two quiescents.

*Imperative*

بِيعُوا	بِيعَا	بِيعْ	Masculine.
بِيعْنَ	بِيعَا	بِيعَتِ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* بِيعْ was originally ابِيعْ, the *kasrah* of the ي being transferred to the preceding quiescent letter (Rule 8, Appendix), the ي is dropped and the first radical being moved with *kasrah*, the *prosthetic hamzah* همزة الوصل is thrown away. In بِيعَا etc., the letter ع being movable, the ي is retained.

*Participle of the Active Voice*

بَائِعُونَ	بَائِعَانِ	بَائِعٌ	Masculine.
بَائِعَاتٌ	بَائِعَاتَانِ	بَائِعَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The remarks which have been made on قَائِلٌ, etc., are applicable here.

*Participle of the Passive Voice*

مَبِيعُونَ	مَبِيعَانِ	مَبِيعٌ	Masculine.
مَبِيعَاتُ	مَبِيعَتَانِ	مَبِيعَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* مَبِيعٌ was originally مَبِيعٌ. The *dammah* of ي being changed into *kasrah*, is transferred to the preceding letter, and the و is rejected, to avoid the junction of two quiescents (Rule 8, Appendix).

The concave verb with ى in the form of فَعَلَ يَقْعُلُ is conjugated as follows :

أَلْخَيَالُ to Think.

*Preterite*

خَالُوا	خَالَا	خَالَ	3rd Masculine.
etc. خَلْنَ	خَالَتَا	خَالَتْ	3rd Feminine.

It is just like خال ; the difference, however, lies in this that the original form of خال was خَيْلٌ.

*Aorist*

يَخَالُونَ	يَخَالَانِ	يَخَالُ	3rd Masculine.
etc. يَخَلْنَ	تَخَالَانِ	تَخَالُ	3rd Feminine.

*Remarks.* The original form of يَخَالُ was يَخَيْلُ, by Rule 8, Appendix. The rest of the inflections are like يَخَافُ, خَافَ.

*Derivative Forms of the Concave Verbs*

The verbs of this kind undergo changes and permutations only in the following forms, viz., اِفْتَعَلَ اِنْفَعَلَ اِسْتَفْعَلَ and اِفْعَلَ ; in the rest, they are inflected as the regular verbs.

اِفْتَعَلَ

With و, as اِحْتَبَأَ, for اِحْتَوَأَ, to be cautious.

Inf.	Imp.	Partic.	Aor.	Pret.
اِحْتَبَأَ	اِحْتَبِ	مُحْتَبِئٌ مُحْتَبِئٌ	يَحْتَبِئُ يَحْتَبِئُ	اِحْتَبَأَ اِحْتَبِئَ

With ی, as اِخْتَارَ, to Choose.

Inf.	Imp.	Partic.	Aor.	Pret.
اِخْتَارَ	اِخْتَرِ	مُخْتَارٌ مُخْتَارٌ	يَخْتَارُ يَخْتَارُ	اِخْتَارَ اِخْتَبَرَ

. Remarks. By Rule 4, Appendix, the original form of حَتَوَأَ  
يَحْتَبِئُ, يُحْتَبِئُ, مَحْتَبِئٌ, مَحْتَبِئٌ, and اِحْتَبِئَ, اِحْتَبِئَ, اِحْتَبِئَ, اِحْتَبِئَ, be-  
come respectively, يَخْتَارُ, اِخْتَارَ, اِخْتَارَ, اِخْتَارَ, and اِخْتَارَ, اِخْتَارَ, اِخْتَارَ, اِخْتَارَ.  
The active and passive participles after permutations, assume the same form.

The infinitive **اِحْتِطَ** was originally **اِحْتَوَطَ**, the movable **و** being changed into **ي** by Rule 16, Appendix. **اِحْتِطَ** was originally **اِحْتَوَطَ**; the *kasrah* of the **و** being transferred to the preceding letter by Rule 6, Appendix, the **و** is changed into **ي** by Rule 3, Appendix. The original form **اُخْتِيرَ** becomes **اُخْتِيرَ** by Rule 6, Appendix; **اِحْطَ**, was originally **اِحْتَوَطَ**, the movable **و**, being changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents.

اِنْفَعَالٌ

With **و**, as **اِنْقِيَادٌ**, (انقواد) to Obey.

Inf.	Imp.	Partic.	Aor	Pret.
اِنْقِيَادٌ	اِنْقُدْ	مُنْقَادٌ مُنْقَادٌ	يُنْقَادُ يُنْقَادُ	اِنْقَادَ اِنْقَدَ

With **ي**, as **اِنْضِيَا**, to be annexed.<sup>1</sup>

Inf.	Imp.	Partic.	Aor	Pret.
اِنْضِيَا	اِنْضُفْ	مُنْضَاةٌ مُنْضَاةٌ	يُنْضَاةٌ يُنْضَاةٌ	اِنْضَاةً اِنْضَفَ

*Remarks.* The original forms **اِنْقَوَدَ**, **اِنْقَوَدَ**, **اِنْقَوَدَ**, **اِنْقَوَدَ**, and **اِنْقَوَدَ**, become **اِنْقَادَ**, **اِنْقَادَ**, **اِنْقَادَ**, **اِنْقَادَ**, and **اِنْقَادَ**, by Rule 4, Appendix; the

<sup>1</sup> For the sake of brevity, short conjugations of the derivative forms have been given here.

original forms  $\text{أَنْقُودٌ}$  and  $\text{أَنْصِيفٌ}$  become  $\text{أَنْقِدٌ}$  and  $\text{أَنْصِيفٌ}$ , by Rule 6, Appendix. The imperative  $\text{انْقُدْ}$  and  $\text{انْصِفْ}$  were originally  $\text{انْقُودْ}$  and  $\text{انْصِيفْ}$ , the movable  $\text{و}$  and  $\text{ي}$  being preceded by *fathah*, is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, and then it is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents. The infinitive  $\text{انْقِيَادٌ}$  was originally  $\text{انْقَوَادٌ}$ , the movable  $\text{و}$  is changed into  $\text{ي}$  by Rule 16, Appendix.

*Defective Verbs ناقص.*

In the primitive trilateral, when the letter  $\text{و}$  comes as the final radical, the verbs come in the forms of  $\text{فَعَّلَ فَعْلٌ}$  and  $\text{فَعَّلَ فَعْلٌ}$ .

Conjugation of the defective verb with  $\text{و}$  in the form  $\text{فَعَّلَ فَعْلٌ}$

$\text{أَدْعُوهُ}$  to Call.

*Preterite of the Active Voice*

$\text{دَعَا}$	$\text{دَعَوَا}$	$\text{دَعَا}$	3rd Masculine.
$\text{دَعَوْنِ}$	$\text{دَعَتَا}$	$\text{دَعَتْ}$	3rd Feminine.
$\text{دَعَوْهُمْ}$	$\text{دَعَوْتُمَا}$	$\text{دَعَوْتُ}$	2nd Masculine.
$\text{دَعَوْنَهُ}$	$\text{دَعَوْتُمَا}$	$\text{دَعَوْتُ}$	2nd Feminine.
$\text{دَعَوْنَا}$	$\text{دَعَوْنَا}$	$\text{دَعَوْتُ}$	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form  $\text{دَعَو}$  becomes  $\text{دَعَا}$ , by Rule 4, Appendix. The dual  $\text{دَعَوَا}$  is left unchanged according to the exception in the above rule. In the plural  $\text{دَعَوَا}$ , the original form was  $\text{دَعَوُوا}$ , the movable  $\text{و}$  being preceded by a *fathah* is changed into *alif*, and then rejected to avoid the junction of two quiescents;

and the original forms دُعُوْتُ and دُعُوْنَا become دُعُتْ and دُعُتْنَا by Rule 4, Appendix. The rest of the inflections undergo no change.

*Preterite of the Passive Voice*

دُعُوا	دُعِيَ	دُعِيَ	3rd Masculine.
دُعِينَ	دُعِيْنَا	دُعِيْتُ	3rd Feminine.
دُعِيْتُمْ	دُعِيْتُمَا	دُعِيْتُ	2nd Masculine.
دُعِيْتِنَّ	دُعِيْتُنِيَّ	دُعِيْتُ	2nd Feminine.
دُعِيْنَا	دُعِيْنَا	دُعِيْتُ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form دُعُوْ becomes دُعِيْ, by Rule 10, Appendix, which operates through all the inflections of this tense. The 3rd masculine plural دُعُوا originally دُعُوُوا becomes دُعِيُوا by the same rule, after which, the vowel *ḍammah* being transferred to the second radical displaces its *kasrah* by Rule 14, Appendix, and then the ي is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents.

*Aorist of the Active Voice*

يدعون	يدعوان	يدعو	3rd Masculine.
يدعون	يدعوان	يدعو	3rd Feminine.
يدعون	يدعوان	يدعو	2nd Masculine.
يدعون	يدعوان	يدعن	2nd Feminine.
يدعو	يدعو	ادعو	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْ becomes <sup>أ</sup>دَعُو by Rule 14, Appendix, and in the same way come <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْ and <sup>أ</sup>دَعُو from <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْ and <sup>أ</sup>دَعُو. In the 2nd and 3rd plural masculine, <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْنَ and <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْنَ were originally <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْنَ and <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْنَ, the *dammah* of و being rejected the و is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents. The 3rd singular feminine <sup>أ</sup>دَعِيْ was originally <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوِيْ, the *kasrah* of the و being transferred to the preceding letter (which then loses its vowel-point) the و is dropped, to avoid the junction of two quiescents (Rule 14, Appendix). The rest of the inflections undergo no change.

*Aorist of the Passive Voice*

<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعِيْ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْ	3rd Masculine.
<sup>أ</sup> دَعِيْ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعِيْ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْ	3rd Feminine.
<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْنَ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعِيْنَ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْ	2nd Masculine.
<sup>أ</sup> دَعِيْنَ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعِيْنَ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْ	2nd Feminine.
<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْ	<sup>أ</sup> دَعُوْ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْ becomes <sup>أ</sup>دَعُو, by Rule 11, Appendix, and then the و is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, and such is the case with <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْ and <sup>أ</sup>دَعُو. In <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْنَ and <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْنَ, originally <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْنَ and <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوْنَ, the و being first changed into *yi* and then into *alif* is dropped, to avoid the junction of two quiescents. In <sup>أ</sup>دَعِيْ, the sing. 2nd fem. originally <sup>أ</sup>دَعُوِيْ, the و is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, and dropped to avoid the junction

of two quiescents. The 3rd and 2nd fem. <sup>أَدْعِيْنَ</sup> and <sup>أَدْعِيْنَ</sup> are for <sup>أَدْعُوْنَ</sup> and <sup>أَدْعُوْنَ</sup>, in which the و is changed into ي, by Rule 11, Appendix. Thus the singular and plural of the 2nd fem. coincide in form.

### Imperative

<sup>أَدْعُوا</sup>	<sup>أَدْعُوا</sup>	<sup>أَدْعُ</sup>	Masculine.
<sup>أَدْعُونِ</sup>	<sup>أَدْعُونِ</sup>	<sup>أَدْعِيْ</sup>	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The original form <sup>أَدْعُوْ</sup> becomes <sup>أَدْعُ</sup>, by Rule 13, Appendix. The plural masculine <sup>أَدْعُوا</sup>, was <sup>أَدْعُوْا</sup>, the *dammah* of the و being rejected by Rule 14, Appendix, the و is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents ; <sup>أَدْعِيْ</sup> was originally <sup>أَدْعُوِيْ</sup>, the *kasrah* of the و being transferred to the preceding letter by Rule 14, Appendix, the و is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents. The rest of the inflections undergo no change.

### Participle of the Active Voice

<sup>دَاعُوْنَ</sup>	<sup>دَاعِيَا</sup>	<sup>دَاعٍ</sup>	Masculine.
<sup>دَاعِيَاتٌ</sup>	<sup>دَاعِيَاتٌ</sup>	<sup>دَاعِيَةٌ</sup>	Feminine.

*Remarks.* <sup>دَاعٍ</sup> was originally <sup>دَاعُوْ</sup> ; the و is changed into ي, by Rule 10, Appendix, the ي losing its vowel-point by Rule 14, Appendix, is dropped to prevent the junction of two quiescents, viz., itself and the *nun* of *tanween* which, though not written, is considered a letter. In <sup>دَاعُوْنَ</sup>, originally <sup>دَاعُوْونَ</sup> and



subsequently دَاعَبُونُ, the ي after losing its *dammah* by Rule 14, Appendix, is dropped to avoid its junction with the quiescent و. In the other inflections, the و is only changed into ي, by Rule 10, Appendix.

*Participle of the Passive Voice*

مَدْعُونٌ	مَدْعُوَانٌ	مَدْعُوٌ	Masculine.
مَدْعَوَاتٌ	مَدْعَوَاتَانِ	مَدْعَوَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* مَدْعُوٌ was originally مَدْعَوُوٌ; the two و coalesce together by Rule 22, Appendix.

Conjugation of the defective verb with و. of the form فَعَلٌ يُفَعِّلُ; as, الرِّضْوَانُ, to be pleased.

*Preterite of the Active Voice*

رَضُوا	رَضِيَا	رَضِيَ	3rd Masculine.
etc., رَضِبْنَ	رَضِيْنَا	رَضِيْتِ	3rd Feminine.

*Remarks.* رَضِيَ was originally رَضُوَ, the و is changed into ي, by Rule 10, Appendix. This is the case with all the inflections. In رَضُوا, which was originally رَضُوُوا and then رَضِبُوا by the same rule the ي, after throwing its vowel to the preceding letter, is dropped by Rule 14, Appendix.

*Preterite of the Passive Voice*

etc., رُضُوا	رُضِيَا	رُضِيَ	Masculine.
--------------	---------	--------	------------

*Remarks.* The remarks made on *دعي* are applicable to these.

*Aorist of the Active Voice*

يَرْضُونَ	يَرْضِيَانِ	يَرْضَى	3rd Masculine.
يَرْضَيْنِ	يَرْضِيَانِ	تَرْضَى	3rd Feminine.
تَرْضُونَ	تَرْضِيَانِ	تَرْضَى	2nd Masculine.
تَرْضَيْنِ	تَرْضِيَانِ	تَرْضَيْنِ	2nd Feminine.
نَرْضَى	نَرْضَى	أَرْضَى	1st Common.

*Remarks.* *يَرْضَى* was originally *يَرْضُو* ; it becomes *يَرْضَى* , by Rule 11, Appendix, and then *يَرْضَى* by Rule 4, Appendix. This is the case with *تَرْضَى* , *أَرْضَى* , and *نَرْضَى* . In *يَرْضِيَانِ* and *تَرْضِيَانِ* , the *ي* is not changed by Rule 4, Appendix. The original forms of the masculine plural, *يَرْضُونَ* and *تَرْضُونَ* , were *يَرْضُوونَ* and *تَرْضُوونَ* , the *و* is first changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, and then rejected to avoid the junction of two quiescents. The original form of the feminine singular *تَرْضَيْنِ* was *تَرْضُوَيْنِ* , the *و* after being changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents. The feminine plurals *يَرْضَيْنِ* and *تَرْضَيْنِ* were originally *يَرْضُوَيْنِ* and *تَرْضُوَيْنِ* , the *و* is changed into *ي* , by Rule 11, Appendix.

*Aorist of the Passive Voice*

يَرْضُونَ	يَرْضِيَانِ	يَرْضَى	Masculine.
-----------	-------------	---------	------------

*Remarks.* The remarks on يَدْعَى etc., are applicable here.

*Imperative*

اِرْضُوا	اِرْضِيَا	اِرْضُ	Masculine.
اِرْضِينَ	اِرْضِيَا	اِرْضِي	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The original form اِرْضُوا becomes اِرْضِيَا, by Rule 11, and then the ى is dropped by Rule 13, Appendix. In اِرْضِيَا, originally اِرْضُوا, the و is only changed into ى, by Rule 11, Appendix; اِرْضُوا was originally اِرْضُوا, the movable و is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, and then rejected, to avoid the junction of two quiescents. اِرْضِيَا was originally اِرْضِيَا, the movable و is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix. and then dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents. In اِرْضِينَ, originally اِرْضُونَ, the و is changed into ى, by Rule 11, Appendix.

*Participle of the Active Voice*

رَاضُونَ	رَاضِيَانِ	رَاضٍ	Masculine.
رَاضِيَاتٌ	رَاضِيَاتَانِ	رَاضِيَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The remarks made on داع, داعيان, etc., are applicable here.

*Participle of the Passive Voice*

مَرْضِيُونَ	مَرْضِيَانِ	مَرْضِيٌّ	Masculine.
مَرْضِيَّاتٌ	مَرْضِيَّاتَانِ	مَرْضِيَّةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The original form مَرَضُوا becomes مَرَضُوا, by Rule 11, Appendix, and then مَرَضِي, by Rule 17, Appendix.

*Defective Verbs with ي*

These are generally of the form فَعَلُ يَقْعُلُ and فَعِلُ يَقْعُلُ. Conjugation of the defective verb with ي of the form فَعِلُ يَقْعُلُ as الرميُّ, to throw.

*Preterite of the Active Voice*

رَمَوْا	رَمَيَا	رَمَى	3rd Masculine.
رَمَيْنَ	رَمَتَا	رَمَتْ	3rd Feminine.
رَمَيْتُمْ	رَمَيْتُمَا	رَمَيْتَ	2nd Masculine.
رَمَيْتُمْ	رَمَيْتُمَا	رَمَيْتِ	2nd Feminine.
رَمَيْدَا	رَمَيْدَا	رَمَيْتَ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* رَمَى was originally رَمِي; the movable ي is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix. In the dual number رَمَيَا the ي is not changed according to Rule 4, Appendix; رَمَوْا was originally رَمَيُوا the movable ي being changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, is dropped by the same rule. This is the case with رَمَتْ and رَمَتَا, originally رَمَيْتِ and رَمَيْتَا, like دَعَتْ دَعَتَا. The other inflections remain in their original forms.

*Preterite of the Passive Voice*

رُمُوا	رُمُوا	رُمِي	3rd Masculine.
رُمِينَ	رُمِينَا	رُمِيَتْ	3rd Feminine.
رُمِمْ	رُمِيْكُمْ	رُمِيْتُ	2nd Masculine.
رُمِيْكُمْ	رُمِيْكُمْ	رُمِيْتُ	2nd Feminine.
رُمِيْنَا	رُمِيْنَا	رُمِيْتُ	1st Common.

All the inflections are in their original forms, excepting رُمُوا, originally رُمُوا, the *ḍammah* of the *ي* being transferred to the preceding letter, the *ي* is dropped by Rule 14, Appendix.

*Aorist of the Active Voice*

يُرْمُونَ	يُرْمِيْنَ	يُرْمِيْ	3rd Masculine.
يُرْمِينَ	يُرْمِيْنَ	يُرْمِيْ	3rd Feminine.
يُرْمُونَ	يُرْمِيْنَ	يُرْمِيْ	2nd Masculine.
يُرْمِينَ	يُرْمِيْنَ	يُرْمِيْنَ	2nd Feminine.
يُرْمِيْ	يُرْمِيْ	يُرْمِيْ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* يُرْمِيْ was originally يُرْمِيْ, the *ḍammah* of the *ي* being dropped by Rule 14, Appendix. This is the case with يُرْمِيْ and يُرْمِيْ. The plural masculine يُرْمُونَ and يُرْمُونَ were originally يُرْمِيُونَ and يُرْمِيُونَ, the *ḍammah* of the *ي* being transferred to the preceding letter by Rule 14, Appendix, the *ي*

is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents. The 2nd feminine singular <sup>أَ</sup>تُرْمِيْنَ was originally <sup>أَ</sup>تُرْمِيَيْنُ, the *kasrah* of the <sup>ي</sup> being rejected by Rule 14, Appendix, the <sup>ي</sup> is dropped, to avoid the junction of two quiescents. The other inflections are in their original forms. Here also the singular 2nd fem. coincides in form with its plural.

*Aorist of the Passive Voice*

<sup>أَ</sup> يُرْمَوْنَ	<sup>أَ</sup> يُرْمِيَانِ	<sup>أَ</sup> يُرْمَى	3rd Masculine.
<sup>أَ</sup> يُرْمَيْنِ	<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمِيَانِ	<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمَى	3rd Feminine.
<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمَوْنَ	<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمِيَانِ	<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمَى	2nd Masculine.
<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمَيْنِ	<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمِيَانِ	<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمِيْنَ	2nd Feminine.
<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمَى	<sup>أَ</sup> تُرْمَى	<sup>أَ</sup> أُرْمَى	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original form of <sup>أَ</sup>يُرْمَى was <sup>أَ</sup>يُرْمِيْ, the movable <sup>ي</sup> is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix. This is the case with <sup>أَ</sup>يُرْمَى and <sup>أَ</sup>أُرْمَى, and <sup>أَ</sup>يُرْمَوْنَ was originally <sup>أَ</sup>يُرْمِيَوْنَ, the movable <sup>ي</sup> being changed into *alif* by Rule 3, Appendix, is dropped to avoid its junction with the quiescent <sup>و</sup>; and similar is the case with <sup>أَ</sup>تُرْمَيْنِ. The 2nd feminine singular <sup>أَ</sup>تُرْمِيْنَ was originally <sup>أَ</sup>تُرْمِيَيْنُ, the movable <sup>ي</sup> being changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents.

The rest of the inflections are in their original forms.

*Imperative*

أَرْمُوا	أَرْمِيَا	أَرْمِ	Masculine.
أَرْمِينَ	أَرْمِيَا	أَرْمِي	Feminine.

*Remarks.* أَرْمِ was originally أَرْمِي ; the ي is dropped by Rule 13, Appendix. The plural masculine أَرْمُوا was originally أَرْمِيُوا ; the *dammah* of the ي being transferred to the preceding letter by Rule 14, Appendix, the ي is dropped to avoid its junction with the quiescent و.

أَرْمِي was originally أَرْمِيِي, the *kasrah* of the ي being rejected by Rule 14, Appendix, the ي is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents.

The rest are in their original forms.

*Participle of the Active Voice*

رَامُونَ	رَامِيَانِ	رَامٍ	Masculine.
رَامِيَاتٌ	رَامِيَتَانِ	رَامِيَةٌ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* رَامٍ was originally رَامِي the *dammah* being rejected by Rule 14, Appendix, the ي is dropped to avoid its junction with the *nūn* of *tanween* which is regarded as a quiescent letter. رَامُونَ was originally رَامِيُونُ, the *dammah* of the ي being transferred to the preceding letter by Rule 14, Appendix the ي is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents.

The rest are in their original forms.

*Obs.* When the definite article <sup>ا</sup>ال is prefixed to the active participle of the defective verbs, or when the final *núnation* is curtailed, the lost <sup>ي</sup> comes back, as <sup>الرَّامِي</sup>الرَّامِي, <sup>الدَّاعِي</sup>الدَّاعِي, and <sup>دَاعِي</sup>دَاعِي instead of <sup>الرَّام</sup>الرَّام, <sup>الدَّاع</sup>الدَّاع etc.

*Participle of the Passive Voice*

<sup>مَرْمِيُون</sup> مَرْمِيُون	<sup>مَرْمِيَان</sup> مَرْمِيَان	<sup>مَرْمِي</sup> مَرْمِي	Masculine.
<sup>مَرْمِيَات</sup> مَرْمِيَات	<sup>مَرْمِيَان</sup> مَرْمِيَان	<sup>مَرْمِيَة</sup> مَرْمِيَة	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The original form <sup>مَرْمِي</sup>مَرْمِي, etc., becomes <sup>مَرْمِي</sup>مَرْمِي, etc., by Rule 17, Appendix.

Conjugation of the defective verbs with <sup>ي</sup>ي, of the measure of <sup>يُفَعِّلُ فَعْلٌ</sup>يُفَعِّلُ فَعْلٌ, as <sup>يُخْشِي</sup>يُخْشِي, to fear.

*Pretcritic of the Active Voice*

<sup>خَشَوْا</sup> خَشَوْا	<sup>خَشِيَ</sup> خَشِيَ	<sup>خَشِيَ</sup> خَشِيَ	Masculine.
<sup>خَشِينَ</sup> خَشِينَ	<sup>خَشِيْنَا</sup> خَشِيْنَا	<sup>خَشِيْتِ</sup> خَشِيْتِ	Feminine.

*Remarks.* The 3rd plural masculine <sup>خَشَوْا</sup>خَشَوْا was originally <sup>خَشِيَوْا</sup>خَشِيَوْا, the *dammah* of the <sup>ي</sup>ي being transferred to the preceding letter, displacing its *kasrah*, by Rule 14, Appendix, the <sup>ي</sup>ي is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents.

The rest are in their original forms.



*Aorist of the Active Voice*

يَخْشَوْنَ	يَخْشِيَانِ	يَخْشَى	3rd Masculine.
------------	-------------	---------	----------------

*Remarks.* يَخْشَى was originally يَخْشَى, the ى is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix. The remarks on يَرْضَى, etc., are applicable to the rest.

*Imperative*

اِخْشَوْا	اِخْشِيَا	اِخْشَ	Masculine.
اِخْشَيْنِ	اِخْشِيَا	اِخْشِي	Feminine

The remarks made on اَرْضَ, etc., are applicable here.

*Participle of the Active and Passive Voices*

خَاشُونَ	خَاشِيَانِ	خَاشٍ	Masculine.
مَخْشِيُونَ	مَخْشِيَانِ	مَخْشِيٌ	Feminine.

The remarks are the same as on رَاضٍ and مَرْضِيٌّ, etc.

*Derivative Forms of the Defective Verbs*

The verbs of this kind have generally the following forms:—

اِفْتَعَالٌ	اِسْتِفْعَالٌ	اِنْفَعَالٌ	اِفْعَالٌ
نُفْعِلٌ	نُفْعَلٌ	نُفَاعِلٌ	مُفَاعَلَةٌ

Infinitive.	Imperative.	Participle.	Aorist.	Preterite.
إِعْدَاءٌ	إِعْدِلْ	{ مُعْدِلٌ مُعْدِلِي	يُعْدِلُ يُعْدِلِي	إِعْدَلْتُ أَعْدَلْتُ
إِسْتِعْلَاءٌ	إِسْتَعْلِلْ	{ مُسْتَعْلِلٌ مُسْتَعْلِلِي	يُسْتَعْلِلُ يُسْتَعْلِلِي	إِسْتَعْلَلْتُ أَسْتَعْلَلْتُ
إِنْجِلَاءٌ	إِنْجِلْ	{ مُنْجِلٌ مُنْجِلِي	يُنْجِلُ يُنْجِلِي	إِنْجَلْتُ أَنْجَلْتُ
إِعْلَاءٌ	أَعْلِ	{ مُعْلٍ مُعْلِي	يُعْلِي يُعْلِي	أَعْلَى أَعْلَيْ
تَعْلِيَةٌ	عَلِّ	{ مُعَلِّ مُعَلِّلِي	يُعَلِّ يُعَلِّلِي	عَلَّى عَلَّيْ
تُعَلِّي or تُعَلِّ	تُعَلِّ or تُعَلِّ	{ مُتَعَلِّلٌ مُتَعَلِّلِي	يُتَعَلِّلُ يُتَعَلِّلِي	تُعَلَّلْتُ تُعَلَّلْتُ
تُعَالِي or تُعَالِي	تُعَالِ or تُعَالِ	{ مُتَعَالٍ مُتَعَالِي	يُتَعَالِي يُتَعَالِي	تُعَالَى تُعُولِي
مُعَالَاةٌ	عَالِ	{ مُعَالٍ مُعَالِي	يُعَالِي يُعَالِي	مُعَالَاةٌ عُولِي

## Remarks

يُعَلِّي يُعَالِي عَلَى نَعَالِي نَعْلِي عَلَى اَعْلَى اَنْجَلِي اَسْعَالِي اَدْنَالِي were originally يَنْعَلُو يَنْعَالُو نَعْلُو نَعْلُو اَعْلُو اَنْجَلُو اَسْعَلُو اَدْنَلُو ; the و is changed into ي by Rule 11, and then into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix.

يُعَلِّي يُعَالِي and بَعْلِي بَعْلِي were originally يَنْعَلُو يَنْعَالُو بَعْلُو بَعْلُو and نَعْلُو نَعْلُو اَعْلُو اَعْلُو according to Rule 11, Appendix, and the *dammah* is dropped by Rule 14, Appendix.

مُعَالٍ مُعَالٍ مُنْعَلٍ مُنْعَلٍ مُعَلٍّ مُعَلٍّ مُنْجَلٍ مُنْجَلٍ مُسْتَعْلٍ مُسْتَعْلٍ undergo similar changes as دَاعٍ دَاعٍ رَامٍ رَامٍ, etc. The passive participles مُعْنَلِي مُعْنَلِي and مُعَالِي مُعَالِي were originally مُنْعَلُو مُنْعَلُو مُنْجَلُو مُنْجَلُو مُسْتَعْلُو مُسْتَعْلُو and مُعَالُو مُعَالُو, the و is changed into *alif* by Rule 4, Appendix, and is dropped, (i.e., suppressed in pronunciation, but retained in writing), to avoid its junction with the quiescent *nún* of *tanween*, which is joined to the *fathah* of the preceding letter. The infinitives اَعْتَلَّ and اُسْتَعْلَّ were originally اَعْتَلَّوْ and اُسْتَعْلَّوْ, the و is changed into *hamzah* by Rule 9, Appendix.

The infinitives نَعَلَّ نَعَلَّ and participles مُنْعَلٍ مُنْعَلٍ مُسْتَعْلٍ مُسْتَعْلٍ, مُعَالٍ مُعَالٍ and مُنْعَلٍ مُنْعَلٍ, when read without *tanween*, the ي is retained as مُعَالِي مُعَالِي مُنْعَلِي مُنْعَلِي نَعَالِي نَعَالِي.

تُعَلِّمٌ was originally تَعْلُوٌ on the measure of تَعْلَةٌ<sup>1</sup>; the و is changed into ي, by Rule 10, Appendix.

*Involute* (لَفِيف)

The conjugation of the *conjunct involute* (لَفِيف مَقْرُون) is, in all respects, the same as that of the defective verbs.

فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
اِفْعُلْ	{ طَاوُ مَطْوِيٌ	يُطْوِيُ يَطْوِيُ	طَوَى طَوَى

فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

اِفْعُلْ	{ قَاوُ مَقْوِيٌ	يُقْوِيُ يَقْوِيُ	قَوَّى قَوَّى
----------	---------------------	----------------------	------------------

The first radical of the *separate involute* (لَفِيف مَفْرُوق) suffers such permutations as that of the *simile* (مِثَال) undergoes, and the last as that of the defective (نَاقِص) verbs; as—

<sup>1</sup> The Infinitive of the Defective Verb of the form تَعْلِيٌّ has the measure تَعْلَةٌ (*vide* the Section on Verbal Nouns).

فَعَلَ بِفَعْلٍ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
ق	{ وَاقِ مَوْفِي	بَقِي بَوْفِي	وَلَقِيَ وُفِّي

*Remarks.* ق was originally اَوْقِيَ on the measure اَفْعِلْ, the prosthetic hamzah together with و being dropped, as in اَعَدَّ ( for اَوَّعَدَّ ), the final ي has been rejected as in اَدْرَمَر ( for اَرْمِي ).

*Obs.* When the letter *alif* replaces a و, it is written in the ordinary form of *alif*, as دَعَا, صَفَا, originally صَفَوْ دَعَوْ; but when it stands for a ي, it is written in the form of ( ي ), as رَمَى, originally رَمَى.

Hamzated Verbs (مهموز)

The verbs with *hamzah* for their first radical are conjugated generally on فَعَلَ بِفَعْلٍ, فَعَلَ بِفَعْلٍ, فَعَلَ بِفَعْلٍ and فَعَلَ بِفَعْلٍ.

فَعَلَ بِفَعْلٍ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
أَوْمَر or أَمَرَ	{ أَمَرَ مَأْمُور	أَمَرَ يُؤْمَر	أَمَرَ أَمَرَ

## فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
اِفْعُلْ	{ اِفْعُلْ مَفْعُولٌ	يَفْعُلُ يُفْعِلُ	اَفْعَلْ اَفْعَلْ

## فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Imp.	Part.	A r.	Pret.
اَفْعُلْ	اَفْعُلْ	يَفْعُلُ	اَفْعَلْ

## فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
اَفْعُلْ	{ اَفْعُلْ مَفْعُولٌ	يَفْعُلُ يُفْعِلُ	اَفْعَلْ اَفْعَلْ

*Remarks.* In يَفْعُلُ, originally يَفْعُلُ, the *hamzah* optionally becomes *alif*, and it becomes و in يَفْعُلُ, originally يَفْعُلُ, by Rule 18, Appendix. The *hamzah* is necessarily changed into و in اَفْعُلْ and اَفْعُلْ originally اَفْعُلْ and اَفْعُلْ, and into ي in اَفْعُلْ, اَفْعُلْ.

originally <sup>أ</sup>ءَدَبَ<sup>أ</sup>, by Rule 19, Appendix. The rest suffer no permutations.

The verbs (مهموز العين) having a *hamzah* for the medial radical, are conjugated as <sup>فَعِلَ</sup>يَفْعُلُ, <sup>فَعِلَ</sup>يَفْعُلُ, <sup>فَعِلَ</sup>يَفْعُلُ and <sup>فَعِلَ</sup>يَفْعُلُ.

فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
اسْأَلْ or سَأَلْ	سَأَلَ مَسْئُولٌ	يَسْأَلُ or يَسَلُ يَسْأَلُ or يَسَلُ	سَأَلَ مَسَلْ

فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
أَدُوبْ	دُئِبَ *	يَدُوبْ *	دُوبْ *

فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
أَدَّأَبْ	دَائِبٌ مَدُوبٌ	يَدَّأَبْ يَدَّأَبْ	دَائِبٌ دَائِبٌ

The above inflections generally suffer no permutations except that *hamzah* is optionally (not necessarily) rejected in those combinations which are subject to Rule 20, Appendix, as يُسْأَلُ for اِسْأَلُ, "He asks," اِسْأَلْ for اَسْأَلْ, "Ask thou."

The verbs having *hamzah* for the last radical are generally inflected on فَعَلَ فَعُلَ, يُفَعِّلُ فَعَّلَ and يُفَعِّلُ فَعَّلَ, as:—

## فَعَلَ فَعُلَ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
اقْرَأْ	{ قَارِئٌ مَقْرُوءٌ or مَقْرُوءٌ	يَقْرَأُ يَقْرَأُ	قَرَأَ قُرِئَ

## فَعَلَ فَعُلَ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
اجْرُوا	{ جَرِيٌّ *	يَجْرُونَ *	جَرَوْا *

## فَعَلَ فَعُلَ

Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.
ابْرَأْ	{ بَارِئٌ مَبْرُوءٌ or مَبْرُوءٌ	يَبْرَأُ يَبْرَأُ	بَرَأَ بُرِئَ



*Remarks.* The above inflections are subject to no permutations, except in the passive participle, <sup>مَقْرُوءٌ</sup>مَقْرُوءٌ, which becomes optionally <sup>مُقْرَأٌ</sup>مُقْرَأٌ, by Rule 21, Appendix.

*Verbs ( مضاعف )*

Verbs of this class are inflected in the following forms:—  
<sup>يُفَعِّلُ</sup>فَعَّلَ as <sup>مَدَّدَ</sup>مَدَّدَ (originally <sup>مَدَّدَ</sup>مَدَّدَ) “he helped,” aorist <sup>يُمَدِّدُ</sup>يُمَدِّدُ (originally <sup>بِمَدَّدٍ</sup>بِمَدَّدٍ) ; <sup>يُفَعِّلُ</sup>فَعَّلَ as <sup>فَرَّرَ</sup>فَرَّرَ (originally <sup>فَرَّرَ</sup>فَرَّرَ), aorist <sup>يُفَرِّقُ</sup>يُفَرِّقُ (originally <sup>بِفَرَّقٍ</sup>بِفَرَّقٍ) ; <sup>يُفَعِّلُ</sup>فَعَّلَ as <sup>طَبَّبَ</sup>طَبَّبَ (originally <sup>طَبَّبَ</sup>طَبَّبَ) “he understood physic,” aorist <sup>يُطَبِّبُ</sup>يُطَبِّبُ (originally <sup>بِطَبِّبٍ</sup>بِطَبِّبٍ) and <sup>يُفَعِّلُ</sup>فَعَّلَ as <sup>لَبَّبَ</sup>لَبَّبَ (originally <sup>لَبَّبَ</sup>لَبَّبَ) “he became wise,” aorist <sup>يَلَبِّبُ</sup>يَلَبِّبُ (originally <sup>بِلَبِّبٍ</sup>بِلَبِّبٍ).

I shall here only give the conjugation of one form, from which the reader will understand the others by analogy. For the sake of showing the several changes which the verbs of this class suffer, I give a full conjugation of the preterite, aorist, etc.

*Preterite of the Active Voice.*

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	
<sup>مَدَدُوا</sup> مَدَدُوا	<sup>مَدَدَا</sup> مَدَدَا	<sup>مَدَدَ</sup> مَدَدَ	3rd Masculine.
<sup>مَدَدْنَ</sup> مَدَدْنَ	<sup>مَدَدَتَا</sup> مَدَدَتَا	<sup>مَدَدَتْ</sup> مَدَدَتْ	3rd Feminine.
<sup>مَدَدْتُمْ</sup> مَدَدْتُمْ	<sup>مَدَدْتُمَا</sup> مَدَدْتُمَا	<sup>مَدَدْتُ</sup> مَدَدْتُ	2nd Masculine.
<sup>مَدَدْتُنَّ</sup> مَدَدْتُنَّ	<sup>مَدَدْتُمَا</sup> مَدَدْتُمَا	<sup>مَدَدْتُ</sup> مَدَدْتُ	2nd Feminine.
<sup>مَدَدْنَا</sup> مَدَدْنَا	<sup>مَدَدْنَا</sup> مَدَدْنَا	<sup>مَدَدْتُ</sup> مَدَدْتُ	1st Common.

The original form مَدَد, etc., becomes مَد, etc., by Rule 23, Appendix. In مَدَدَيْن, etc., the two homogeneous letters do not coalesce for the reasons stated in Rule 24, Appendix. In the passive voice it is conjugated as (etc., مَدَّ مَدًّا مَدُّوْا), for (etc., مَدِّد مَدِّدًا مَدِّدُوْا), the same rule being applicable to that also.

*Aorist of the Active Voice*

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.	
مَدُّوْنَ	مَدَّانِ	مَدَّ	3rd Masculine.
مَدُّوْنَ	مَدَّانِ	مَدَّ	3rd Feminine.
مَدُّوْنَ	مَدَّانِ	مَدَّ	2nd Masculine.
مَدُّوْنَ	مَدَّانِ	مَدَّانِ	2nd Feminine.
مَدَّ	مَدَّ	مَدَّ	1st Common.

*Remarks.* The original forms مَدَّد, etc., become مَدَّ, etc., by Rule 25, Appendix. The words مَدَّدَيْن and مَدَّدَانِ remain without coalescence, for the reasons stated in Rule 24, Appendix.

*Imperative*

Plural.	Dual.	Singular.
مَدُّوْا	مَدَّا	مَدَّ or مَدَّ
مَدِّدُوْا	مَدِّدَا	مَدِّدْ

*Remarks.* The original form  $\text{مَدَدٌ}$  becomes optionally  $\text{مَد}$  or  $\text{مَدٌّ}$ , by Rule 24, Appendix.

*Participle of the Active Voice*

$\text{مَادُونَ}$	$\text{مَادَانِ}$	$\text{مَادٌ}$
$\text{مَادَاتٌ}$	$\text{مَادَاتِنِ}$	$\text{مَادَةٌ}$

*Remarks.* The original forms  $\text{مَادَدٌ}$  etc., become  $\text{مَاد}$ , etc., by Rule 25, Appendix (latter part, proviso).

The passive participle does not suffer any permutation, as  $\text{مَمْدُودٌ}$ ,  $\text{مَمْدُودَانِ}$ ,  $\text{مَمْدُودُونَ}$ , etc.

*Derivative Forms of the Surd Verb.*

Infinitive	Imperative	Participle	Aorist	Pret.	Infinitive
$\text{اِمْتَدَادٌ}$	$\text{اِمْتَدِدْ}$ or $\text{اِمْتَدِ}$	$\text{مَمْتَدٌ}$ $\text{مَمْتَدٌ}$	$\text{يَمْتَدُ}$ $\text{يَمْتَدُ}$	$\text{اِمْتَدَ}$ $\text{اِمْتَدَ}$	$\text{اِئْتِمَادٌ}$
$\text{اِسْتِمْدَادٌ}$	$\text{اِسْتَمْدِدْ}$ or $\text{اِسْتَمْدِ}$	$\text{مَسْتَمْدٌ}$ $\text{مَسْتَمْدٌ}$	$\text{يَسْتَمْدُ}$ $\text{يَسْتَمْدُ}$	$\text{اِسْتَمْدَ}$ $\text{اِسْتَمْدَ}$	$\text{اِسْتِئْمالٌ}$
$\text{اِنْحِلَالٌ}$	$\text{اِنْحَلِلْ}$ or $\text{اِنْحَلِ}$	$\text{مُنْحَلٌ}$ $\text{مُنْحَلٌ}$	$\text{يَنْحَلُّ}$ $\text{يَنْحَلُّ}$	$\text{اِنْحَلَّ}$ $\text{اِنْحَلَّ}$	$\text{اِنْئِمالٌ}$

Infjn.	Imp.	Part.	Aor.	Pret.	
أَعْدَادُ	أَعْدِدْ or أَعِدْ	{ مَعْدِدٌ مَعْدٍ	{ يَعْدُ يَعِدْ	{ أَعَدَّ أَعَدَ	أَفْعَالٌ
تَعَادٌ	تَعَادِدْ or تَعَادْ	{ تَعَادِدٌ تَعَادِدٍ	{ يَتَعَادُ يَتَعَادِ	{ تَعَادَّ تَعَادَ	تَفَاعُلٌ
مَعَادَةٌ	مَعَادِدْ or مَعَادْ	{ مَعَادِدٌ مَعَادِدٍ	{ يَمَعَادُ يَمَعَادِ	{ مَعَادَّ مَعَادَ	مُفَاعَلَةٌ

*Remarks.* The above inflections suffer permutations exactly as the primitive forms. The active and passive participles are apparently of the same form ; but the difference lies in this, that the origin of مَعْدِدٌ, etc , when participle active, is مَعْدِدٌ, while that of the passive participle is مَعْدِدٌ, the two homogeneous letters coalescing together by Rule 28, Appendix.

#### *Conclusion.*

Among the irregular verbs I may reckon also the following verbs. Though they are not mentioned in the chapter on Etymology by our native grammarians, I follow the example of the Anglo-Arabic grammarians.

#### *Negative Verb* لَيْسَ

This verb is supposed by some to be the compound of the particle لا 'not', and the obsolete word لَيْسَ, 'he is', or 'was'. It is

conjugated only in the preterite, having no aorist, imperative, participle, etc., and is inflected as follows :—

لَيْسَ	لَيْسَا	لَيْسُوا	3rd Masculine.
لَيْسَتْ	لَيْسَتَا	لَيْسْنَ	3rd Feminine.
لَسْتُ	لَسْتُمَا	لَسْتُمْ	2nd Masculine.
لَسْتِ	لَسْتُمَا	لَسْتُنَّ	2nd Feminine.
لَسْتُ	لَسْنَا	لَسْنَا	1st Common.

*Verbs of Praise and Censure (أَفْعَالُ الْمَدْحِ وَالذَّمِّ)*

The verbs called the verbs of praise and censure are :—  
 نَعَمْ it is good ; بَيْسٌ it is bad ; حَبْدًا it is very good ; and سَاءٌ it is very bad. Excepting the last (سَاءٌ), they are irregular and indeclinable.\* The original forms of نَعَمْ and بَيْسٌ were نَعَمٌ and بَيْسٌ, of the measure حَسَبٌ ; the medial vowel point has been suppressed by frequent use. The word حَبْدًا is compounded of حَبٌّ, it or he is excellent, or worthy of love, and that, (demonstrative pronoun).

*Verbs of Admiration or Wonder (أَفْعَالُ التَّعَجُّبِ)*

These also, like the preceding, may be called rather a kind of Interjection than a particular species of verb. They have two

---

\* The feminine نَعِمْتُ and بَيْسْتُ and dual نَعْمَا and plural نَعْمُوا occur very rarely.

forms, the first **مَا أَفْعَلُ**, the form of the third person singular masculine of the preterite of **أَفْعَلَ**, preceded by the particle **مَا**, and followed by a noun in the accusative case. The second is the singular masculine of the imperative of the same form, *i.e.* **أَفْعَلْ**, followed by the object having the preposition **بِ** prefixed ; as **مَا أَحْسَنَ زَيْدًا**, How good is Zaid, **أَحْسِنْ زَيْدَ** How good is Zaid —the real meaning being, What has made Zaid so good ? and do good to Zaid.

## NOUNS.

The Arab grammarians divide the nouns into three classes, *viz.*, ( **جامد** ) the primitive, ( **مصدر** ) verbal or infinitive, and ( **مشتق** ) derivative nouns.

We will treat of each of these classes under three separate heads.

### *The Primitive Nouns.*

The primitive nouns, which are called by the Arab grammarians **الاسم الجامد**, non-derivative nouns, are in fact substantives, *i.e.*, names of substances, as **رَجُلٌ** a man, **فَرَسٌ**, a horse, **كَتِفٌ** a shoulder, etc. These nouns generally consist of three, four, or five, radical letters, to which sometimes one or more servile letters are added. But no noun can comprise more than four servile letters, nor can the aggregate number of radicals and serviles exceed seven.

As the knowledge of the different measure of this class of nouns, irrespective their being unlimited, is not very important, I will not encroach upon the time of the reader by inserting them here. For them he may consult Dr. Lumsden's comprehensive work.

*The Infinitive or Verbal Nouns.*

The infinitive or verbal noun is called by the Arab grammarians المصدر, *the source*, because it is according to some of them the source of derivation of finite verbs, participles, and derivative nouns. The Arabic infinitive participates of the nature of verbs as well as of nouns. When it is taken as verb, it nearly corresponds with the verb of the same mood in English, and consequently ought to be translated into English by a verb of the same nature as قَتَلَ, to kill ; نَصَرَ, to help. etc.

But when it is used as a noun, it entirely resembles the participial or verbal, and abstract nouns in English, as قَتْلٌ killing, نَصْرٌ helping, شَرَفٌ nobility, عَظَمَةٌ greatness, etc.

The infinitives of the derivative trilateral verbs as well as those of the primitive and derivative quadrilateral ones, are of prescribed and defined forms, as from اِفْتَعَلَ we get inf. اِفْتِعَالٌ, from اسْتَفْعَلَ, اسْتِفْعَالٌ etc.

But the infinitive of فَعَلَ is sometimes formed on the measure of نَفْعَةٍ as from جَرَبَ, he experienced, نَجْرَةٌ experience. The

infinitive of this measure, however, comes generally from the ناقص defective verbs, as تَسْمِيَةٌ, to nominate, from سَمَّى, he nominated, نُقْرِبَةٌ, to give strength, from قَرَّى, he gave strength. Sometimes, though rarely, the infinitive of the above verbs is formed of the measure of فَعَالٌ, as سَلَامٌ, to salute or salutation, from سَلَّمَ, he saluted, and of the measures of فَعَالٌ, فَعَّالٌ, نَفَعَالٌ, and نَفَعَّالٌ, as from كَذَّبَ, كَذَّابٌ, to belie, and from كَرَّرَ, تَكَرَّرَ, to repeat, and from بَيَّنَّ, تَبَيَّنَ, to explain. The infinitive of فَعَّلَ has sometimes the measure of فَعَّلَالٌ, as زَلَزَلَ, it shook, زَلَزَالَ, to shake as an earthquake, and that of مَفَاعَلَةٌ has sometimes فَعَالٌ as قَتَالَ, to fight each other.

The forms of the infinitive of the primitive trilateral verbs being undefined, they can only be ascertained by consulting dictionaries ; but they have generally one of the following measures :—

فَعَّلَ as قَتَلَ “to slay.”

فَعَّلَ as فِسَقَ “to sin.”

فَعَّلَ as شَكَرَ “to thank.”

فَعَّلَ as كَلَبَ “to overcome.”

فَعَّلَ as رَحِمَ “to have mercy.”

فَعَّلَ as قَلَّ “to be less.”



- فَعَّلَ as نَصَرَ "to help."
- دَعَا as شَرَّفَ "to be noble."
- دَعَا as كَرِهَ "to abhor."
- فَعَّلَ as لَعِبَ "to play."
- فَعَّلَ as سَرَفَ "to steal."
- فَعَّلَ as صَغَرَ "to be small."
- فَعَّلَ as هَدَى for هَدَى "to guide."
- فَعَّلَ as صَالَحَ "to be good."
- فَعَّلَ as قَامَ "to stand."
- فَعَّلَ as سَأَلَ "to ask."
- فَعَّلَ as خَدَعَ "to cheat."
- فَعَّلَ as لَزِمَ "to be necessary."
- فَعَّلَ as صَعَبَ "to be hard."
- فَعَّلَ as عَبَدَ "to serve."
- فَعَّلَ as شَكَّى "to complain."
- فَعَّلَ as ذَكَرَ "to recollect."
- فَعَّلَ as حَزَنَ "to disappoint."
- فَعَّلَ as كَفَرَ "to be ungrateful."

A few, however, are reducible to the following rules:—

(1) The infinitive of the verbs of the forms of **فَعَلَ** and **فَعِّلَ** when transitive, generally has the measure of **فَعْلٌ**, as **ضَرَبَ** he beat, **ضَرْبٌ** to beat or beating; **فَسِمَ** he understood, **فَسْمٌ** to understand or understanding; but the infinitive of the verbs of the form of **فَعِلَ** when intransitive generally has the measure of **فُعُولٌ**, as from **خَرَجَ** he went out, **خُرُوجٌ** to go out or going out. The verbs of the form of **فَعِلَ** when intransitive has the measure of **فَعْلٌ** as **فَرِحَ** he became glad, **فَرَحٌ** to be glad, or gladness.

Thus the infinitive of the verbs of the form of **فَعَّلَ** has generally the measure of **فَعَالَةٌ** and **فُعُولَةٌ**, as **شَرَّفَ** he became noble, **شَرَافَةٌ** to be noble, or nobility, **صَعَّبَ** he became hard, **صُعُوبَةٌ** to be hard or hardness. Sometimes, however, the infinitive of the above verbs has the measure of **فَعَالٌ**, **فُعَالٌ**, **فَعْلٌ**, **فُعْلٌ**; as **جَمَّلَ** beauty, **حَسَّنَ** beauty, **كَرَّمَ** generosity, **عَظَّمَ** greatness.

(2) Verbs signifying *arts, trades, professions, handicraft, or office*, have in their infinitives the measure of **فَعَالَةٌ**, or **فُعَالَةٌ**, as **تِجَارَةٌ** trading as a merchant, **خِبالَةٌ** having the profession of a tailor, **كِتَابَةٌ** the office of a writer, **فَلَّاحَةٌ** the art of agriculture.

(3) Verbs expressing *illness or ailment* of any kind form their infinitives according to the measure of **فُعَالٌ**, as **سُعَالٌ** coughing, **زُكَامٌ** coldness, **دَوَارٌ** swimming of the head. Those also signifying

sound, are formed of the above measure, as <sup>مُرَاعٍ</sup> calling aloud, <sup>نُبَّاحٍ</sup> the barking of a dog, <sup>بُعَاءٍ</sup> and <sup>رُعَاءٍ</sup> the lowing of a camel.

(4) Infinitives signifying *flight* are formed of the measure of <sup>فِعَالٍ</sup>, as <sup>فِرَارٌ</sup>, <sup>نِقَارٌ</sup> and <sup>شِرَارٌ</sup> to flee.

(5) Verbs signifying *colour* generally form their infinitives of the measure of <sup>فُعْلَةٍ</sup> as <sup>حُمْرَةٌ</sup> being red, <sup>خَضْرَةٌ</sup> being green, <sup>سُمْرَةٌ</sup> being straw-coloured, <sup>عُفْرَةٌ</sup> being yellow.

(6) Infinitives signifying *motion*, *perturbation*, *agitation*, etc., are formed of the measure of <sup>فُعْلَانٍ</sup>, as <sup>خَفْقَانٌ</sup> palpitation of the heart, <sup>دَوْرَانٌ</sup> revolving.

As a general rule, a *Masdar-i-Mimi*, i.e., an infinitive beginning with the letter *mim*, is formed from every verb of whatever form it may be, of the measure of <sup>مُضَرَّبٍ</sup>, as <sup>مُضَرَّبٌ</sup> to beat or beating, <sup>مَقْدَمٌ</sup> to come forth or coming forth. So likewise an infinitive expressing *that an act has taken place once* has the measure of <sup>فُعْلَةٍ</sup> as <sup>ضَرْبَةٌ</sup>, the act of beating once, or one blow, and that expressive of *kind*, has the measure of <sup>فُعْلَةٍ</sup> as <sup>ضَرْبَةٍ</sup>, a kind of beating. The infinitive of the measure <sup>فُعْلُولَةٍ</sup> belongs only to *concave* verbs, (اجوف), as <sup>دَبْمُومَةٌ</sup> to continue, from <sup>دَامَ</sup>, <sup>بَيْنُونَةٌ</sup> to separate, from <sup>بَانَ</sup>, <sup>عَيْبُونَةٌ</sup> to be absent, from <sup>عَابَ</sup>, etc.

### 1.—The Derivative Nouns.

The derivative nouns in Arabic are of six kinds:—1st, Active participle, 2nd, Passive participle, also called the noun of the agent اسم الفاعل, and the noun of the object اسم المفعول; 3rd, simple

attributive adjectives الصفة المشبهة ; 4th, nouns of superiority, التفضيل اسم (or adjective of the comparative and superlative degrees) ; 5th, nouns of time and place اسم الظرف ; 6th, nouns of instrument اسم الآلة. These classes of nouns are termed by the Arabic grammarians with a general denomination of الصفة, the adjective\* or the attributive noun, in contradistinction to the substantive and verbal noun, which are called الاسم the noun.

*The Participles active and passive. or the Nouns of the agent and the object.*

The active and passive participles in Arabic are of a twofold nature. Sometimes they are used as verbs governing their objects in the accusative as زَيْدٌ قَاتِلٌ عَمْرًا, Zaid is killing Amr ; and sometimes they are used as participial adjectives and nouns of agency, as رَجُلٌ فَاضِلٌ, a learned man, جَاءَ كَاتِبٌ, a writer has come. As already stated, the active participle of the primitive trilateral verbs is formed according to the measure of فَاعِلٌ, as ضَارِبٌ from ضَرَبَ, and نَاصِرٌ from نَصَرَ, and the passive participle according to the measure of مَفْعُولٌ, as مَضْرُوبٌ from ضَرَبَ, etc.

But the active participles from the derivative trilateral, and the primitive and derivative quadrilateral are formed according to the measure of the aorist of the active voice, and the passive

---

\* Hence the term noun الاسم is applied to nouns in contradistinction both to verbs and particles, and sometimes to nouns not signifying any attributive quality.

participles according to the measure of that of the passive voice, changing the sign of the aorist into *dammated mim* and giving a *tanween* at the end and *kasrah* to the penultimate letter of the active participle if it has not, as from <sup>سَخَرُ</sup> <sup>سَخَرُ</sup> <sup>سَخَرُ</sup> <sup>سَخَرُ</sup> ; from <sup>مَكْرَمُ</sup> <sup>مَكْرَمُ</sup> <sup>مَكْرَمُ</sup> <sup>مَكْرَمُ</sup> ; from <sup>مَدَحَرُ</sup> <sup>مَدَحَرُ</sup> <sup>مَدَحَرُ</sup> <sup>مَدَحَرُ</sup> ; from <sup>مَقْبَلُ</sup> <sup>مَقْبَلُ</sup> <sup>مَقْبَلُ</sup> <sup>مَقْبَلُ</sup>, etc.

*The Simple Attributive or Verbal Adjectives.*

The simple attributive adjective is an adjective derived chiefly from neuter verbs, and expresses a quality inherent or permanent in a person or thing. The forms of this class of derivative nouns are unlimited, but the following are of general occurrence :

<sup>صَعِبُ</sup> <sup>صَعِبُ</sup> <sup>صَعِبُ</sup> <sup>صَعِبُ</sup> as <sup>صَعِبُ</sup> <sup>صَعِبُ</sup> <sup>صَعِبُ</sup> <sup>صَعِبُ</sup>, hard.

<sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> as <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup>, empty.

<sup>صَلْبُ</sup> <sup>صَلْبُ</sup> <sup>صَلْبُ</sup> <sup>صَلْبُ</sup> as <sup>صَلْبُ</sup> <sup>صَلْبُ</sup> <sup>صَلْبُ</sup> <sup>صَلْبُ</sup>, hard.

<sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> as <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup>, handsome.

<sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> as <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup>, harsh or rough.

<sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> as <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup>, intelligent.

<sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> as <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup>, scattered.

<sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> as <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup>, fat.

<sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> as <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup>, unkind.

<sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> as <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup> <sup>فَعِلُ</sup>, impure.

أَفْعَلٌ, as أَحْمَرٌ, red.

فُعْلَاءُ, as حُمَرَاءُ, red (female).

فُعِيلٌ, as كَرِيمٌ, generous.

فُعِيلٌ, as سَيِّدٌ. (orig. سَيِّدٌ) lord.

فَاعِلٌ, as كَبِيرٌ, great.

فُعَالٌ, as جَبَانٌ, timid.

فُعَالٌ, as هِمَجَانٌ, white camel.

فُعَالٌ, as شُجَاعٌ, brave.

فُعَالٌ, as وَضَاءٌ, very pure or handsome.

فُعَالٌ, as كُبَارٌ, very exalted.

فُعُولٌ, as عَاوِرٌ, very proud.

فُعُلَى, as سُكْرَى, a female drunkard.

فُعُلَى, as حُبْلَى, pregnant.

فُعُلَى, as حَيْدَى, wild (she-ass).

فُعُلَانٌ, as عَطْشَانٌ, thirsty.

فُعُلَانٌ, as عُرْيَانٌ, naked.

فُعُلَانٌ, as حَيَوَانٌ, an animal or living.

فُعْلَاءُ, as عَشْوَاءُ, a camel of ten months' pregnancy.

From the verb whose preterite has the measure **فَعَلَ**, the simple attributive has generally the measure **فَعْلَان**, **أَفْعَل**, **فَعْلَان**, as from **فَرِحَ** he became glad, **فَرِحَ**, glad, **فَطِنَ**, he became intelligent, **فَطِنَ**, intelligent, **سَوَدَ**, he became black, **أَسْوَدَ**, black, **شَبِعَ** he became satiated, **شَبِعَان**, satiated.

And from a verb whose preterite has the measure **فَعَلَ** the simple attributive has the measure **فَعْلٌ**, and **فَعِيلٌ** as **ضَخِمَ**, he became bulky, **ضَخِمٌ**, bulky, **كَرُمَ**, he became generous **كَرِيمٌ**, generous.

Verbs having the preterite formed as **فَعَلَ**, will generally form the simple attributive according to **فَعْلٌ**, as **عَضَبَ**, it became sharp, **عَضَبٌ**, sharp ; but if the medial radical be **و** or **ي**, it is formed according to **فَيْعِلٌ**, as **سَيِّدٌ** lord, **جَيِّدٌ**, excellent, **مَيِّتٌ**, dead, (originally **سَيُّودٌ**, **جَيُّودٌ** and **مَيُّوتٌ**) from **سَادَ**, **جَادَ**, **مَاتَ** (originally **سَوَدَ**, **جَوَدَ** and **مَوَّتَ**).

It must be borne in mind that from verbs signifying colours or denoting personal or mental defects or ornaments, the simple attributive has the measure **أَفْعُلٌ** (feminine **أَفْعُلَاءُ**), (whatever measure the preterite may have), as **أَبْيَضَ**, white, fem., **أَبْيَضَاءُ**, **أَحْمَرُ**, red, fem., **أَحْمَرَاءُ** ; **أَخْضَرُ** green, fem., **أَخْضَرَاءُ** ; **أَعْرَضَ** blind of one eye, fem., **أَعْرَضَاءُ**, **أَعْمَى**, blind, fem., **أَعْمِيَاءُ**, **أَحْمَقٌ**, foolish, fem., **أَحْمَقَاءُ**, **أَبْلَجَ**, having open eyebrows, fem., **أَبْلَجَاءُ**.

Verbs signifying appetite and passion, motion, or satisfaction, intoxication, or joy, have their simple attributive most commonly of the measure of فَعْلَانُ as :

جُوعَانُ, hungry.

عَطْشَانُ, thirsty.

شَبْعَانُ, satiated with food.

رَبَّانُ, satiated with water.

سُكْرَانُ, intoxicated.

فَرَحَانُ, glad.

عُضْبَانُ, angry.

*Adjectives with intensive significations, otherwise called*

*اسم المبالغة Nouns of Intensity.*

Intensity is expressed by the following measures :

فَعِيلٌ as عَلِيمٌ, omniscient.

فَعُولٌ as أَكُولٌ, a great eater or glutton.

فَعَّالٌ as كَذَّابٌ, a great liar ; عَلَّامٌ very learned.

As a general rule the nouns indicating professions and trades have usually the above form, as خَبَّازٌ, a baker from خَبَزَ, a loaf ; جَمَّالٌ, a camel driver from جَمَلَ, a camel ; خَيَّاطٌ, a tailor from خَيَّطَ, to sew.

Sometimes the termination فَعَّالٌ is added to give still greater





is the greatest. In this case, it agrees in number and gender with the substantive,

The feminine **فَعْلَى** is only used in the sense of a superlative, and is always used with the definite article **ال** or **مضاف**, as **الزاوية العظمى** the greatest angle ; **بناتي الكبرى**, my eldest daughter, **هinda فاضلة النساء** Hind is most excellent of the women. It must be kept in mind that it is never used as comparative.

The noun of superiority is not regularly formed from the derivative trilateral and quadrilateral of any measure or class, nor from the verbs signifying colour and personal defects, in order to avoid its being confounded with the simple attributive adjectives. which in such verbs, has the measure of **أَفْعَل**, as **أَبْيَضُ**, white, **أَحْمَرُ**, red, **أَسْوَدُ**, black, etc.

But when a comparison is intended, the form of **أَفْعَل** is taken from a verb significant of excellence, superiority, intensity, beauty, ugliness, strength, weakness, etc., followed by a verbal noun or infinitive of the required word in the accusative case, as **هَذَا أَشَدُّ بَيَاضًا مِنْ ذَلِكَ**, this is whiter than that ; **هُوَ أَحْسَنُ تَعْلِيمًا مِنْ بَكْرٍ**, Zaid is lamer than Amr. ; **زَيْدٌ أَفْسَحُ عَرَجًا مِنْ عَمْرٍو**, he is a better teacher than Bakr.

The words **خَيْرٌ**, better, **شَرٌّ**, worse, though not of the form **أَفْعَل**, are often used as comparatives and superlatives, as **زَيْدٌ خَيْرُ النَّاسِ**, **الصلوة خير من النوم**, prayer is better than sleeping. **زَيْدٌ شَرُّ مَنْ عَمْرٍو**, Zaid is the best of men, **زَيْدٌ شَرُّ النَّاسِ** Zaid is the worst of men.

*Nouns of Time and Place.*

( اسم الزمان والمكان or اسم الظرف )

The noun of time and place expresses the place or time in which an action takes place, as **مَقْتُلٌ**, the place or time in which an act of slaying occurred. From verbs whose aorists have their medial radical moved with *fathah* or *dammah* and from those of the *defective* (ناقص) class, this noun is formed of the measure **مَفْعَلٌ**, as from **سَمِعَ**, he heard, (aorist **يَسْمَعُ**) we get **مَسْمَعٌ**, place or time of hearing; from **قَتَلَ**, he slew, (aorist **يَقْتُلُ**) we have, **مَقْتَلٌ**, place or time of slaughter; from **رَمَى**, he shot (aorist **يَرْمِي**), we get **مَرْمَى** (for **مَرْمِي**), place or time of shooting.

From verbs whose aorists have their medial radicals moved with *kasrah* and from those of the *simile* **مِثَال** class, it is formed according to the measure **مَفْعَلٌ**; as from **ضَرَبَ**, he struck (aorist **يَضْرِبُ**) we get **مَضْرَبٌ**, time or place of striking; from **وَضَعَ**, he put (aorist **يَضَعُ**) we have **مَوْضِعٌ**, time or place of putting.

As exceptions to the above rule, there are several verbs which, though they have the medial radicals of their aorist moved with *dammah*, form the noun of time and place irregularly according to the measure **مَفْعَلٌ**; they are the following:

- (1) **مَشْرِقٌ**, the place where the sun rises, or east.
- (2) **مَغْرِبٌ**, the place where the sun sets, or west.
- (3) **مَجْرَرٌ**, the place where a camel is slaughtered.

- (4) مَرْفِقٌ, the place where one rests his elbow, the elbow.
- (5) مَسْقَطٌ, the place where anything falls.
- (6) مَقْرَقٌ, the place of division, in particular the place where the hair divides in different direction, the crown of the head.
- (7) مَنبِتٌ, the place of growing.
- (8) مَنخَرٌ, the place of passing breath, or nostril.
- (9) مَنَسَكٌ, the place where a sacrifice is offered.
- (10) مَسْجِدٌ, the place of prostration, or a mosque.
- (11) مَسْكَنٌ, the place of dwelling, or habitation.
- (12) مَطْلَعٌ, the place of ascent. or rising.

Of these twelve nouns, the last three are, however, sometimes regularly used with the medial radical moved with *fathah*.

The measure مَفْعَلَةٌ, is also used to denote a place where the object signified by the word from which it is derived, is found in abundance, as مَأْسَدَةٌ, a place where lions are found in abundance, from أَسَدٌ, a lion ; مَدَابِئٌ a place where wolves abound, from ذئبٌ a wolf. This class of nouns is termed by some grammarians by the name of اِسْمُ الْكَثْرَةِ, noun of abundance.

The (اِسْمُ الظَّرْفِ) noun of time and place, from the verbs of the derivative triliteral as well as from the primitive and derivative quadriliteral. agrees in form with thier passive

participles as **مُدْخَلٌ** from **ادْخَلَ** (aorist **يَدْخُلُ**) a time or place of making one enter ; **مُنْصَرَفٌ** from **انْصَرَفَ** (aorist **يَنْصَرِفُ**) a time or place of returning ; **مُدْحَرَجٌ** from **دَحَرَجَ** (aorist **يُدْحَرِجُ**) a time or place of revolving

From verbs of the **اجوف** *concave* class with **و** it takes the form of **مَقَامٌ** and **مَخَاتٌ** (originally **مَقُومٌ** and **مَخُوفٌ**, *vide* Rule 8, Appendix). But the **اجوف** with **ي** sometimes has the form **مَصْبِرٌ** also.

### Noun of Instrument, اسم الآلة

Noun of instrument is a noun indicating an instrument or means used in performing an action.

It is formed only from the primitive trilateral verbs and has the measures **مِفْعَالٌ**, **مِفْعَلٌ**, and **مِفْعَلَةٌ** ; as, **مِفْطَحٌ مِفْطَحٌ**, or **مِفْطَحَةٌ**, an instrument of opening, or key from **فَتَحَ**, he opened ; **مِقْصَصٌ** (orig. **مِقْصَصٌ**) and **مِقْرَاعٌ**, an instrument of clipping, or a pair of scissors, from **قَصَّ** and **قَرَضَ**, he clipped. **مِقْوَدٌ** a bridle, from **قَادَ** he led, **مِيزَانٌ** (orig. **مِوزَانٌ**) a balance, from **وَزَنَ**, he weighed ; **مِرْوَحَةٌ** a fan from **رَاحَ**, he blew.

Some nouns of instrument are irregularly formed on the measures of **فِعَالٌ**, **مِفْعَلٌ** and **مِفْعَلَةٌ** as **خِيَاطٌ**, an instrument of sewing, or a needle, **نِطَاقٌ**, an instrument of tying the waist, or a belt, **مِنْخَلٌ**, a sieve, **مِدْقٌ**, an instrument for pounding medicine ; **مَكْحَلَةٌ**, a box, or instrument for holding collyrium, etc.

*The relative Adjectives, الاسماء المنسوبة.*

A sort of adjective, corresponding in some respects to the English proper adjectives and adjectives ending with *ly* *ic*, etc., is formed from nouns whether common or proper by adding the termination *ي* to the nouns from which they are derived, and denotes that a person or thing belongs to or is connected with the sense of the noun (in respect of family, birth, religion, sect, trade, etc.) as *هَاشِمِيٌّ*, related to the family of *هَاشِمٌ*; *دِمَشْقِيٌّ* born or living at Damascus, from *دِمَشْقٌ* Damascus, *أَرْضِيٌّ*, earthly, from *أَرْضٌ*, the earth; *عِلْمِيٌّ*, scientific, from *عِلْمٌ* science; *وَلَدِيٌّ* one who worships *وَلَدٌ* idol; *حَنَفِيٌّ* belonging to the sect founded by *أَبُو حَنِيفَةَ*; *فَاكِهَانِيٌّ* one who deals in *فَاكِهَةٌ*, fruit. Such formation is called *نسبة*, *relation*, and the noun is called *منسوب* *related*.

On forming the adjective of this class, the primitive noun undergoes various changes, a brief description of which I now give.

1. On adding the termination *ي*, the final *tanween* as well as the feminine termination *ة*, and the terminations of the dual and plural, are rejected, as form *مَكَّة*, the city Mecca *مَكِّيٌّ*, from *قَيْسَانِيٌّ*, *قَيْسِيٌّ*, form *ضَارِبُونَ* or *ضَارِبَاتٌ*; when the plurals are proper names, then if it is declined like a plural, the termination is to be rejected, otherwise retained; hence from *قَنْسَرِينَ* (a place in Syria) which admits both declensions, has *قَنْسَرِيٌّ* and also *قَنْسَرَانِيٌّ*.

2. The letter **ي** or **و** in a noun formed on either of the measures **فُعَيْلَة** or **فُعُولَة** when its medial radical is not an infirm letter and the noun not belonging to the *surd* (مضاعف) class, is rejected as from **حَنِيفَة** name of a person **حَنِيفِي**; **مَدْنِي** city **مَدْنِيَّة**; **كُهْلِي** middle age, **كُهْلِيَّة**. But if its medial radical is an infirm letter, or when it is of *surd* class, the **ي** or **و** must be retained as from **عُرُولَة** a rope, **عُرُولِي**, **حَقِيقَة** reality **حَقِيقِي**. As exceptions to the above rule are **طَبِيعِي** related to **طَبِيعَة** nature and **سَلْبَقِي** related to **سَلْبَقَة** in-tinct **سَلِيمِي** related to the tribe of **سَلَمَة** and **عَمِيرِي** respectively, which retain **ي** although they are not of the *surd* class nor is their medial an infirm letter. And **عَبْدِي** and **جَذْمِي** related to the tribes of **عَبِيدَة** and **جَذِيمَة** have *damnah* in the first letter irregularly.

3. The letter **ي** from a noun formed on **فُعَيْلَة** is always dropped when it is not of *surd* class; as from **جُهَيْنَة** name of a tribe, **جُهْنِي**; otherwise it must be retained as from **حُبَيْبَة** name of a woman **حُبَيْبِي**.

4. The letter **ي** in a noun formed on **فُعَيْل** or **فُعِيل** is retained when it does not belong to the defective (ناقص) class as **حَنِيفِي** related to **حَنِيف** one who professes the religion of **حَنِيف** Ibrahim, **عُقَيْلِي** relative to **عُقَيْل** a tribe.

The following are exceptions to the above rule:—

**هُذَلِي** related to **هُذَيْل** (a tribe); **ثُقَيْفِي** related to the tribe of **ثُقَيْف**; **قُرَشِي** related to the tribe of **قُرَيْش**; **مُلَحِي** related to the father of a well known tribe; **مُلَحِي** related to **مُلَح**.

5. Nouns formed on <sup>فَعِيلٌ</sup>, <sup>فَعِيلَةٌ</sup>, or <sup>فَعِيلٌ</sup>, <sup>فَعِيلَةٌ</sup> being of the defective class, reject first of the two doubled *yās* changing the final <sup>ي</sup> into <sup>و</sup>; as from <sup>عَدِيٌّ</sup> (a tribe) <sup>عَدَوِيٌّ</sup>; <sup>نَبِيٌّ</sup> a prophet <sup>أُمِيَّةٌ</sup> name of a noun <sup>قَصْرِيٌّ</sup> from <sup>قَصِيٌّ</sup> name of a noun <sup>أُمِيَّةٌ</sup> name of the father of a tribe, <sup>أُمَرِيٌّ</sup>.

6. The second <sup>ي</sup> of the form <sup>فَعِيلٌ</sup> (for <sup>فَعِيلٌ</sup>) is rejected, as <sup>سَيِّدِيٌّ</sup> related to <sup>سَيِّدٌ</sup> chief.

But <sup>طَيٌّ</sup> related to <sup>طَائِيٌّ</sup> (a tribe) is regularly formed.

7. The ( <sup>الف مقصورة</sup> ) short *alif* ( <sup>ي</sup> or <sup>ا</sup> ) being third radical of a triliteral noun, is changed into <sup>و</sup> on suffixing the <sup>ي</sup> as from <sup>رَحِيٌّ</sup> a mill, <sup>رَحَوِيٌّ</sup>; <sup>عَصَا</sup> a staff <sup>عَصَوِيٌّ</sup>. But if the *alif* is a fourth letter in a quadriliteral noun, then, if the same *alif* has sprung from an original <sup>و</sup> or <sup>ي</sup>, it may either be changed into <sup>و</sup> (which is preferable) or be rejected, as from <sup>مَلْهُيٌّ</sup> (for <sup>مَلْهُوٌّ</sup>) a musical instrument, <sup>مَلْهُوِيٌّ</sup> or <sup>مَلْهُيٌّ</sup> and from <sup>مَعْنِيٌّ</sup> (for <sup>مَعْنِيٌّ</sup>) meaning, <sup>مَعْنَوِيٌّ</sup> or <sup>مَعْنِيٌّ</sup>. And if the *alif* has not sprung from an original <sup>و</sup> or <sup>ي</sup>, but be a fem termination, then if the second letter be quiescent, the <sup>ي</sup> may either be rejected (which is preferable) or changed into <sup>و</sup> as from <sup>حَبْلِيٌّ</sup> pregnant, <sup>حَبْلِيٌّ</sup> or <sup>حَبْلَوِيٌّ</sup> and sometimes (though rarely) an *alif* is added before the <sup>و</sup> as <sup>حَبْلَاوِيٌّ</sup>. If the second letter is moved with vowel the <sup>ي</sup> is invariably rejected, as from <sup>جَمَزِيٌّ</sup> a swift camel <sup>جَمَزِيٌّ</sup>. A noun which bears <sup>الف اللاحق</sup> i.e., an *alif* resembling that of a feminine termination but not



being actually so, is like <sup>حَبْلِي</sup>, as <sup>ارطى</sup> name of a tree <sup>ارطوى</sup> or <sup>ارطى</sup> <sup>عيسى</sup> Jesus <sup>عيسوى</sup> or <sup>عيسى</sup>.

When the *alif* is the fifth or sixth letter of a noun, it must be rejected on suffixing the *ي* of relation as from <sup>مُصْطَفَى</sup> chosen, *i.e.*, our prophet <sup>مُصْطَفَى</sup> ; <sup>قَبْعَتِي</sup> a large canal, <sup>قَبْعَتِي</sup>.

*Obs.*—The erroneous forms <sup>مُصْطَفَوِي</sup> and <sup>مُرْضَوِي</sup> (relative adjectives of <sup>مُصْطَفَى</sup> and <sup>مُرْضَى</sup>) are commonly used by modern writers.

8. The final letter *ي* preceded by *kasrah* when it is the third letter of a trilateral noun, is changed into *و* and the *kasrah* is changed into *fathah* as <sup>عَمِي</sup> related to <sup>عَم</sup> (for <sup>عَمِي</sup>) mentally blind. But when it is a fourth letter, it may be also changed into *و* but its rejection is preferable, as <sup>قَاضِي</sup> or <sup>قَاضَوِي</sup> related to <sup>قَاضٍ</sup> (for <sup>قَاضِي</sup>) a judge. And when such *ي* is fifth and sixth, it must be rejected only, as <sup>مُشْتَرِي</sup> related to <sup>مُشْتَرٍ</sup> (for <sup>مُشْتَرِي</sup>) purchaser, <sup>مُسْتَسْقِي</sup> related to <sup>مُسْتَسْقٍ</sup> (for <sup>مُسْتَسْقِي</sup>).

9. When a final doubled *ي* comes at the end of a noun composed of more than three letters, it is superseded by *ي* of relation, as <sup>كُرْسِي</sup> related to <sup>كُرْسِي</sup>, a chair ; <sup>شَافِعِي</sup> related to the sect <sup>شَافِعِي</sup>, so the original and relative nouns both coincide in form with each other.

The servile *ي* in a form like <sup>مَرْمَوِي</sup> (for <sup>مَرْمَوِي</sup>) may be rejected and radical *ي* changed into *و*, superseding the *kasrah* of the second radical by *fathah*, as from <sup>مَرْمَوِي</sup> thrown, <sup>مَرْمَوِي</sup> ; but the better mode of formation is to supersede both the doubled

(ي) by ي of the relation, as in the above rule—as مَرْمِي related to مَرْمِي.

10. The final *hamzah* of the (الف ممدودة) prolonged *alif* when the *alif* is a termination of the feminine gender, is always changed into ;<sup>1</sup> as حَمْرَاءُ related to حَمْرَاءُ (a red coloured female), بَيْضَاءُ related to بَيْضَاءُ a town in Persia, otherwise it may either be changed into و or retained ; as from كِسَاءُ a mantle, كِسَاءِي or كِسَائِي ; سَمَاءُ heaven سَمَائِي or سَمَائِي. But if the *hamzah* be original it must remain unchanged, as قُرَاءُ reader قُرَائِي. The forms صَنْعَانِي related to صَنْعَاءُ a city in Yemen. بَهْرَانِي related to بَهْرَاءُ a tribe, رُوحَانِي related to رُوحَاءُ name of a city جَلُولِي related to جَلُولَاءُ name of a place ; حُرُورِي related to حُرُورَاءُ a town, are exceptions to the above rule.

11. The letters ي and و following a quiescent letter at the end of word, generally form the relative without any change except the rejection of the final ة if there be any, as ظَبْيِي related to ظَبْيِي, and ظَبْيِي (dear); سَائِي related to سَائِي a city ; except in بَدْوِي related to بَدْوِي desert, قَرْوِي related to قَرْوِي village, in which the quiescent letter gets *fathah*. The grammarian Yonus changes ي into و as ظَبْوِي.

When second radical is an ي doubled with the final ي, it reappears and the final one is changed into و as from حَيِي a folding, حَيِي ; طَوَوِي ; حَيِي Arab village, حَيَوِي.

<sup>1</sup> According to Ibn-i-Hatim, the *hamzah* also may be retained, as حَمْرَائِي

12 Such nouns which having lost their third redical, remained only with two letters, as أَب (for أَبُو) father, أَخ (for أَخُو) brother حَم (for حَمُو) relative of a woman from her husband's side, دَم (for دَمُو) blood, necessarily recover that lost letter, provided the medial letter be originally movable and a prosthetic *hamzah* is not added to it after rejection as أَبُو (originally أَخُو) أَبُو (originally أَبُو) otherwise its recovery is not necessary; as from دَم blood (originally دَمُو or دَمِي; original بُنُو) بُنُو or بُنُو and أَسْم (original سُمُو) سُمُو or سُمِي.

But such nouns which have lost their first redical do not resume it, as وَعَد (orig. عَدَّ) makes عَدِي except when it is a *separate involute kind* as وَشَوِي, شَيْء.

13 In the nouns formed on فَعْل the *kasrah* of the medial letter is changed into *fathah* as from نَمِر a leopard نَمَرِي; but in the from فَعْل the *kasrah* may be optionally retained as اِبِلِي, اِبِل and in فَعْل the *fathah* may either be changed into *kasrah* or retained as from عَنَب عَنَبِي or عَنَبِي. But in nouns composed of more than three letters, the *kasrah* of the penultimate letter is not changed, as تَغَلَب from تَغَلَبِي a tribe.

14. When a relative adjective is formed from a proper name composed of two words, it is formed of the first part, as بَعْلِي from بَعْلِيك came of a city which is composed of بعل and بك; and so تَابِطِي from تَابِطُ شَرًّا. In such proper names which consist of مضاف and مضاف اليه (governing and governed nouns)

there are two alternatives. If the first be one of the nouns, **اب** father **ابن** son **أم** mother **بنت** daughter it is rejected and **ي** is suffixed to the governed nouns (مضاف اليه) as from **ابوبكر** **بَكْرِي**, **امرؤ القيس** **قَيْسِي** ; **ابن الربيع** **رَبِيعِي** ; otherwise the important part intended by the speaker will be retained, as **امرؤ القيس** **قَيْسِي** from **امرؤ** ; and **عبيد الله** **عَبِيدِي** from **عبد مناف** **عَبْدِي** .

Sometimes the relative is formed on the measure **فَعْلَلِي** by selecting two letters from each of the component parts or three from first and one from the second nouns, as **عَبْسَمِي** from **عبد الدار** **عَبْدِي** , **عبد القيس** **عَبْقَسِي** , **عبد شمس** **عَبْدُ شَمْسِي** .

15. When a relative adjective is to be formed from a plural, it must be rendered into singular forms, as from **كُتُب** , relative **كُتَابِي** , and from **مُسَجِدِي** , **مَسَاجِدِي** ; except when the plural form is a proper name as **كَلَابِي** relative to **بني كلاب** a tribe and **أَنْصَارِي** to, **انصار** (the people of Medina who helped our prophet).

*Obs.*—Some relative adjectives from some proper names of the cities and towns chiefly (عجمي) foreign are irregularly formed, as **رَازِي** to **رَازِي** , **بَعْشُورِي** to **بَعْشُور** , **جَبْرِثِي** to **جَبْرِث** , **امطغرزي** to **امطغرزي** , **طبري** , **لرستان** to **لُرِي** , **سروزي** to **سَجِسْتَان** , **امطغرزي** to **طبرستان** , **جُرَانِي** or **جُرَانِي** to **جُرَانِي** , **أذربيجان** to **أَذَرَبَيْجَانِي** , **طبراني** to **طَبْرَسْتَان** .

The relative adjective of **يمن** Yemen **شام** Syria form irregularly **يَمَنِي** or **أَيْمَانِي** ; **شَامِي** or **الشَّامِي** ; instead of **يَمَنِي** and **شَامِي** which are also used.

The relative adjective from **جَسْم** body, **نَفْس** soul, **نُور** light, **روح** spirit, etc., is formed by suffixing the termination **أَنِي** and is

used chiefly in scientific and theological writings as جَسَامِيّ bodily, نَفْسَانِيّ mental, نُورَانِيّ illumined, رُوحَانِيّ spiritual.

We do not find any rule regarding the formation of this form of relative adjective in any original Arabic Grammar. My humble opinion is that this form was imported into the Arabic from the Syriac language when the scientific works were translated into Arabic by the Syriac Nestorian Christians in the days of the Abbaside Caliphs.

Sometimes a termination ة is added to the end of the adjective of this class, converting it to the sense of an infinitive or abstract noun, as اِنْسَانِيَّة humanity, from اِنْسَانٌ serving or the act of serving, from خَادِمٌ a servant مَخْدُومِيَّة service or being served.

Sometimes this sort of noun is formed from pronouns and particles or rather coined in the language of philosophical schools for the use of scientific writings as هَوِيَّة the individuality or Itism from هُوَ he or it, اِنَانِيَّة egotism from اَنَا ego or I, كَيْفِيَّة quality (lit. howness) from كَيْف how كَمِيَّة quantity from كَمْ how much, مَاعِيَّة quiddity from مَاذَا what is that etc.

*The formation of the Diminutive Noun, التّصغير.*

Sometimes a certain modification is made in the forms of nouns for the purpose either of indicating the diminutive size of an object or paucity of number or of expressing contempt, affection, or endearment to a person or thing. This modification

is known in grammar by the name of **التصغير** the diminution.<sup>1</sup>

It is got in the trilateral nouns by changing its ordinary form into the measure of **فُعَيْلٌ** as from **رَجُلٌ** a man, **رَجِيلٌ** a little man ; **عَبْدٌ** a servant, **عَبِيدٌ** a little servant ; **كَلْبٌ** a dog, **كَلِيبٌ** a little dog ; and in the nouns composed of four letters by changing them into the measure of **فُعَيْلٌ** as **عَقْرَبٌ** a scorpion, **عَقِيرَبٌ** a little scorpion. When the noun consists of five letters, but the fourth letter is an *infirm* one, in the *diminutive* it assumes the form of **فُعَيْلٌ** as **عَصْفُورٌ** a sparrow, **عَصِيفِرٌ** a little sparrow, but when the fourth letter is a strong one or the noun consists of more letters than five, the diminutive **فُعَيْلٌ** is formed from the first four, and the rest are rejected as **سُفْرَجَلٌ** a quince, **سُفْرَجَلٌ** a little quince, **عَنْدَلِيبٌ** a nightingale, **عَنْدِلٌ** a little nightingale. Sometimes the fifth letter in the former is retained as **سُفْرَجَلٌ**.

1. The servile terminations **ة** - **ى** - **اء** - **ان** and the *alif* of the plural form **أَفْعَالٌ** are retained unchanged in the diminutive, as **حَبْلَى** - **زَيْدَةٌ** dim. of **أَجِيمَالٌ** - **سُكَيْرُنٌ** - **حُمَيْرَاءٌ** - **حَبِيلَى** - **زَيْدَةٌ** **أَجِمَالٌ** - **سُكْرَاءٌ** - **حُمَرَاءٌ**.

<sup>1</sup> The principal measures prescribed by the grammarians are **فُعَيْلٌ**, **فُعَيْلٌ**, (or **فُعَيْلٌ**) **فُعَيْلٌ** (or **فُعَيْلٌ**) in which there is no regard of radical or servile letters. Hence **مُحْيِرَبٌ** is held to be in the measure of **فُعَيْلٌ**, though the letter **م** which comes instead of the **ف** of the measure, is a servile.



scorpion, except <sup>قَدِيدِمَة</sup> and <sup>وَرِيكَة</sup> dim. of <sup>قَدَام</sup> before وراء behind.

6. When the letter *wāw* (و) or *alif* (ا) whether servile or sprung from the original (و or ي) follows the ي of dim. it is changed into ي and then the two *yās* coalesce together ; as <sup>أَحُول</sup> squint-eyed <sup>أَحِيل</sup> (for <sup>أَحِيل</sup>) <sup>عَصَا</sup> (orig. <sup>عَصَو</sup>) <sup>عَصِيَة</sup> (for <sup>عَصَاة</sup>) <sup>أَسِيد</sup> <sup>جَدُول</sup> and <sup>أَسُود</sup> and <sup>أَسِيد</sup> and <sup>جَدِيل</sup> are also (though not elegantly) allowed, <sup>أَسِيد</sup> and <sup>جَدِيل</sup> are more elegant.

7. When after the application of the above rule three *yās* come together, the last is omitted in an elegant speech, as <sup>عُطِي</sup> (for <sup>عُطِي</sup>) dim. of <sup>عُطَاء</sup>.

8. The short *alif* (ا) being sign of the fem. gender, when it comes after the fourth letter in a noun, is dropped ; as, <sup>جَعِجَب</sup> dim. of <sup>جَعِجَبِي</sup> name of a tribe ; but the prolonged *alif* (اء) is always retained.

9. A noun having two servile letters rejects one which is of less importance, as <sup>مُطِيل</sup> - <sup>مُغِيل</sup> - <sup>مُضِير</sup> and <sup>مُقِيد</sup>, dim. of <sup>مُطَلِق</sup> - <sup>مُضَارِب</sup> - <sup>مُضَارِب</sup> and <sup>مُقِيد</sup> in which the *mim* is retained being important, indicating the participial form. When both are equal in point of importance, then either may be dropped ; as <sup>فَلَيْسِيَة</sup> or <sup>فَلَيْسَة</sup>, dim. of <sup>فَلَيْسَة</sup> a cap. A noun having three servile letters retains one which is indicative of the form of the part of speech and reject the rest ; as <sup>مُقْعِلَس</sup> in <sup>مُقْعِلَس</sup>. A noun of quadriliteral root rejects all its serviles ; as <sup>مُقْشَعَر</sup> makes its dim.



قَشِيعَر but if there be a *maddah*, it must be retained being changed into ي as حَرِيجِم dim. of اَحْرَنْجَام.

10. When a dim. is to be formed of a ( جمع الكثرة ) *plural of multitude*, there are two alternatives, either it must be rendered first to ( جمع القلة ) *plural of paucity* and then the dim. formed out of it, as عَلَمٌ (pl. of multitude of عَلَامٌ) is rendered into عَلِمَةٌ and then the dim. عَلِيمَةٌ is formed out of it. or it is brought back to its singular form out of which the dim. is formed out, and then it is pluralised in the form of the *regular plural* ( جمع السالم ), as عَلَمٌ is reduced to عَلَامٌ and then the dim. from it عَلِيمٌ is pluralised, as عَلِيمُونَ and likewise دُورٌ the *plural of multitude* of دَارٌ is reduced first to its singular and then formed دَوِيرَةٌ which is pluralised as دَوِيرَاتٌ.

11. When a dim. is formed of a compound noun, it is formed out of its first part, as عَبْدُ اللَّهِ dim. عَبِيدُ اللَّهِ, بَعْلُكَ dim. بَعْلِكَ.

There is another sort of dim. called تَصْغِيرُ التَّرْخِيمِ in which the word is rendered back to its primitive root by rejecting all its serviles and then its dim. is formed out of it as in the dim. حَمِيدٌ or مُحَمَّدٌ is حَمِيدٌ.

12. 'The demonstrative and relative pronouns ( اَسْمَاءُ الْاِشَارَةِ ) take also their dim. forms by adding an *alif* at the end preceded by an ي as

ذَا this (masc.)	dim.	ذِيَّ
تَا this (fem.)	,,	تِيَّ

الَّذِي <sup>ا</sup> he who	dim.	الَّذِي <sup>ا</sup>
الَّتِي <sup>ا</sup> she who	„	الَّتِي <sup>ا</sup>
الَّذَانِ <sup>ا</sup> they who (masc. dual)	„	الَّذَيْنِ <sup>ا</sup>
الَّتَانِ <sup>ا</sup> they who (fem. dual)	„	الَّتَيْنِ <sup>ا</sup>
الَّذِينَ <sup>ا</sup> they who (masc.)	„	الَّذِينَ <sup>ا</sup>
الَّتَاتِ <sup>ا</sup> they who (fem.)	„	الَّتَاتِ <sup>ا</sup>

## NUMBERS.

In Arabic, there are three numbers, the singular, the dual and the plural. The singular denotes *one*, the dual *two* and the plural *more than two*.

The dual is formed by adding to the singular, the termination *اَيْنِ* (in the nominative case) and *يْنِ* (in the genitive and accusative case-) as *رَجُلٌ* “a man,” *رَجُلَانِ* or *رَجُلَيْنِ* “two men,” *رِجَالٌ* “men”

1. If in a noun the letter *alif* be the third letter, (which was originally *wāw* و) then it shall be changed into و *irāw* in the dual as *عَصَا* (orig. *عَصَوٌ*) “a staff,” *عَصَوَانِ* “two staves-”

If the *alif* be not the third letter but the fourth, or upwards, or if the *alif* were originally *yā* ي, then it should be changed into ي *yā* on suffixing the termination of the dual as *مُصْطَفَى* (originally *مُصْطَفَوٌ*) “the chosen,” *مُصْطَفَيْنِ* “two chosen persons,” *حُبْلَى* “a pregnant woman” (in which the *alif* is the

termination of the feminine gender, and not originally (ي or و) حُلَيَّانِ “two pregnant women.”

If a *prolonged alif* (الف ممدودة) be at the end of the singular, then if the same *alif* be a termination of the feminine gender, it shall be changed into و *wāw* on suffixing the termination of the dual, as حُمْرَاءُ “a red-coloured woman,” حُمْرَاوَانِ “two red-coloured women,” otherwise it shall be retained as قُرَّاءُ “a skilful reader of the Koran.” قُرَّاءَانِ.

When two nouns signify two objects near each other in nature, or very commonly associated together, the dual number may then be formed from one of them, in order to indicate the sense of both; this is called by grammarians تغليب “to make one prevail over the other,” or قَمَرَيْنِ or قَمَرَانِ “two moons,” i.e., “the sun and the moon,” when the two nouns are of the same gender, the shorter must prevail over the other as حُسَيْنَانِ or حُسَيْنَيْنِ “two Hasans” meaning حَسَنُ Hasan and حُسَيْنُ Husain “the beloved sons of the daughter of our prophet.” عُمَرَاوَانِ or عُمَرَيْنِ “two Umars” that is ابوبكر Abubakr and عمر Umar, the first two caliphs. But in case of the two nouns being of different genders, the masculine is preferred to the feminine, as اَبَوَانِ or اَيُّوْنِ “both parents,” i.e., اَبٌ “father” and اُمٌ “mother” and not اَمَّانِ or اَمَّيْنِ.

In Arabic plurals are of *two* kinds:—

1. Those which have only a single form are termed, by the Arab grammarians الجمع السالم or الجمع الصحيح *the sound or*

*perfect plural*, since it is formed only by adding a termination at the end, keeping the form of the singular unchanged, as سَارِقٌ "a thief," سَارِقُونَ "thieves." I shall call these *regular plurals*.

2. Those which have various forms are called الجمع المكسر or جمع التفسير "broken plural," because the form of the singular is broken or changed in them as قَلْبٌ "heart," قُلُوبٌ "hearts." I shall call these *irregular plurals*.

### *Regular Plurals.*

The masculine regular plural is formed by adding the terminations اُنْ - (in the nominative case) and اَيْنْ - (in the accusative and genitive cases) as مُسْلِمٌ pl. مُسْلِمُونَ or مُسْلِمِينَ. And the feminine regular plural is formed by adding اَتْ - to the singular, in which case if the noun be ending in ة it will be dropped, as مَرْيَمُ Mary, plural مَرْيَمَاتُ plural, مَادِقَاتُ plural, مَادِقَةٌ plural, مَادِقَاتُ ;

The masculine regular is only applicable to the nouns signifying attributes of rational beings as well as to the diminutive form of any class of noun, as:—

Sing.	صَادِقٌ truthful,	pl.	صَادِقَاتُ
Sing.	صَالِحٌ good,	pl.	صَالِحُونَ
Sing.	هِنْدِيٌّ an Indian,	pl.	هِنْدِيُّونَ
Sing.	رَجُلٌ a little man,	pl.	رَجُلُونَ

But substantive nouns or nouns destitute of attributive signification, or nouns signifying attribute of an irrational being, are

not pluralized in this form ; as رَجُلٌ ' a man,' in not pluralized as رَجُلُونَ or نَاعِقٌ "braying (as an ass)" is not pluralized نَاعِقُونَ. However there are a few exceptions to the above rule which I shall herein state.

سَنَةٌ year, pl. سَنُونَ  
 أَرْضٌ the earth, pl. أَرْضُونَ  
 ابْنٌ son, pl. بَنُونَ  
 أَهْلٌ family, pl. أَهْلُونَ  
 عَالَمٌ the world, pl. عَالَمُونَ

The feminine regular plural is formed of the

1. Proper names of females and such names of males as end in ة, as زَيْنَبُ Zainab (name of a lady) plural زَيْنَبَاتٌ ; طَلْحَةُ Talha (name of a man) plural طَلْحَاتٌ -

2. Feminine adjectives, of which the masculine gender has the regular plural, as صَادِقَةٌ "a truthful woman," plural صَادِقَاتٌ ; since its singular masculine صَادِقٌ is pluralized as صَادِقُونَ

3. Feminine substantive nouns ending in prolonged *alif* ذِكْرَى or short *alif* عَلَى as صَرَّاءُ "distress," plural صَرَّاءَاتٌ ' ذِكْرَى "memory," plural ذِكْرِيَّاتٌ

4. Names of letters of the alphabet as الف plural الفات, باء plural بئات

5. All attributives not applicable to rational beings as نَاعِقٌ braying (as an ass) plural نَاعِقَاتٌ ; صَانِعٌ "a horse standing on three legs," plural صَانِعَاتٌ

6. Sometimes the verbal nouns or infinitives as تَعْرِيفٌ definition, plural تَعْرِيفَاتٌ

7. Common nouns of foreign origin even when they denote persons as سُرَادِقٌ "a tent," (Arabised of the Persian word سُرَپَرْدِه) plural سُرَادِقَاتٌ - بیمارستان or مارستان "an hospital," plural بیمارستانات or مارستانات - آغا "an Aga," plural آغوات - باشا "a Pasha," plural باشوات - راجا "a Hindu king" راجوات

8. Adjectives which are used in the plural as substantives as كُنُتَاتٌ "entities" or beings (from كَانٌ "being,") مَرُجُودَاتٌ "beings" (from مَوْجُودٌ "found or existing") مَخْلُوقَاتٌ "creatures" (from مَخْلُوقٌ created).

Sometimes, several masculine substantive nouns which have no مَكْسُور جمع broken plural as حَمَامٌ "a warm bath," plural حَمَامَاتٌ, مَهْمَمٌ "enterprising," plural مَهْمَمَاتٌ

Remarks.—In the formation of the feminine of regular plural, the *jazm* of the medial radical in feminine substantives of the forms of فَعْلَةٌ, فَعْلَةٌ, فَعْلَةٌ, فَعْلَةٌ, فَعْلَةٌ, and فَعْلَةٌ when the second is not an infirm letter, is sometimes superseded by *fathah* or vowel-point homogenous to that of the preceding letter as اَرْضٌ plural اَرْضَاتٌ, فَصَةٌ "a dish," plural فَصَعَاتٌ, هَذٌ "a name of a woman," plural هَذَاتٌ, كِسْرَةٌ "a fragment," plural كِسْرَاتٌ, ظُلْمَةٌ "darkness," plural ظُلُمَاتٌ or ظُلُمَاتٌ. If the second radical be an infirm letter, the *jazm* is always retained as جُوزَةٌ "a nut," plural جُوزَاتٌ, بَيْضَةٌ "an egg," plural بَيْضَاتٌ

*The Irregular Plural. الجمع المكسر*

The Irregular plural has been divided into two classes : the first is termed جمع القلة *the plural of paucity*, because it is supposed by grammarians to be generally not applicable to any number above *ten*, and the second is termed جمع الكثرة *the plural of multitude*, held by them to be applicable to any number from three upwards.

However in point of fact the above limitation of the plural of paucity to a number not exceeding ten, is not practically observed, since it is sometimes used for a plural of multitude, being then applicable to the number above ten.

The plural of paucity is formed on the following four measures :—

1. أَفْعُلْ

This form of plural is applicable to all substantive nouns (but not to the attributives) formed on the measure of فَعْلٌ provided the medial letter be not infirm as فُلْسٌ “a small coin,” plural أَفْلُسٌ; يَدٌ “hand,” plural أَيْدٍ (originally أَيْدِي which becomes أَيْدٍ by Rule 14, Appendix).

Also it is applicable to the nouns of the following measures :—

1. أَفْعُلْ as رَجُلٌ a leg, pl. أَرْجُلٌ
2. أَفْعُلْ as قُفْلٌ a lock, pl. أَقْفُلٌ
3. أَفْعُلْ as عُنُقٌ a neck, p. أَعْنُقٌ
4. أَفْعُلْ as جَبَلٌ a mountain, pl. أَجْبَلٌ

5. <sup>فَعِلٌ</sup> as <sup>نَمِرٌ</sup> a panther, pl. <sup>أَنْمَرٌ</sup>

6. <sup>فَعِلٌ</sup> as <sup>ضَلَعٌ</sup> a rib, pl. <sup>أَضْلَعٌ</sup>

7. <sup>فَعِلٌ</sup> as <sup>ضَبُعٌ</sup> a hyena, pl. <sup>أَضْبَعٌ</sup>

Also this form of plural is applicable by analogy to all feminine substantives of four letters not ending in ة, and whose third letter is a quiescent infirm one, preceded by a homogenous vowel point as <sup>عُنَاقٌ</sup>, a female kid, pl. <sup>أَعْنَقٌ</sup>; <sup>ذِرَاعٌ</sup> a cubit, pl. <sup>أَذْرَعٌ</sup>.

#### Exceptions.

It is anomalously applicable by authority of usage to certain nouns of the forms <sup>فَعِلٌ</sup> and <sup>فَعْلٌ</sup> of which the medial letter is *infirm*, as <sup>ثَوْبٌ</sup>, a garment, pl. <sup>أَثْوَبٌ</sup>; <sup>قَوْسٌ</sup>, a bow, pl. <sup>أَقْوَسٌ</sup>; <sup>سَيْفٌ</sup>, a sword, pl. <sup>أَسَيْفٌ</sup>; <sup>عَيْنٌ</sup>, an eye, pl. <sup>أَعْيُنٌ</sup>; <sup>دَارٌ</sup> (orig. <sup>دَوْرٌ</sup>) a house, pl. <sup>أَدْوَرٌ</sup>; <sup>نَابٌ</sup> (orig. <sup>نَيْبٌ</sup>) foretooth, or tusk, pl. <sup>أَنْيَبٌ</sup>. Likewise to some masculine substantives of four letters, whose third letter is an infirm one, preceded by a homogeneous vowel-point as <sup>نَهَارٌ</sup>, a day, pl. <sup>أَنْهَرٌ</sup>; <sup>عُرَابٌ</sup> a crow, pl. <sup>أَعْرَبٌ</sup>, etc.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> It should be borne in mind that in some cases the plural of one noun is formed on several measures, as for instance, the word <sup>ثَوْبٌ</sup>, cloth or garment, is pluralised sometimes on the measure <sup>أَفْعَالٌ</sup> as <sup>أَثْوَبٌ</sup>, sometimes on <sup>فِعَالٌ</sup> and <sup>ثِيَابٌ</sup> and sometimes on <sup>أَفْعَلٌ</sup> as <sup>أَنْوَبٌ</sup>, and such is the case with <sup>سَيْفٌ</sup> the forms of whose plural are <sup>أَسَيْفٌ</sup>, <sup>سَيْوَفٌ</sup>, <sup>أَسِيفٌ</sup> etc.



## 2. أَفْعَالٌ

This form of the plural is applicable to all nouns either substantive or attributive formed on the measure of فَعْلٌ and having an infirm letter for the medial radical as, قَوْلٌ, speech, pl. أَقْوَالٌ ; سَيْفٌ a sword, pl. أَسْيَافٌ ; عَوْنٌ helper, pl. أَعْوَانٌ ; حَيٌّ living, pl. أَحْيَاءٌ (orig. أَحْيَايِي which becomes such according to Rule 9, Appendix).

It is applicable to all nouns, substantive or attributive, formed on any one of the following measures : whether the medial radical be infirm or not, viz., فَعْلٌ, فَعْلٌ, فَعْلٌ, فَعْلٌ, فَعْلٌ, as حُكْمٌ an order, plural أَحْكَامٌ, نورٌ light, plural أَنْوَارٌ, free, pl. أَحْرَارٌ, حِمْلٌ a burden, plural أَحْمَالٌ, عِيدٌ a festival, plural أعياد, بَكْرٌ a virgin plural أَبْكَارٌ, جَمَلٌ a camel, plural أَجْمَالٌ, بَابٌ a door (orig. بَوْبٌ), plural أَبْوَابٌ, فَخْذٌ thigh, plural أَفْخَادٌ, عَضْدٌ arm, plural أَعْضَادٌ, أُذُنٌ ear, plural أَذْنَانٌ.

It is applicable to all nouns, substantive or attributive, formed on the measure فَعُولٌ, and having the letter و for the last radical, as عَدُوٌّ, an enemy (orig. عَدَوٌّ) plural أَعْدَاءٌ, etc.

Also to all substantives (not to attributives) of the form فَعْلٌ or فَعْلٌ, as عِنَبٌ grape, plural أَعْنَابٌ ; إِبِلٌ a camel, plural أَكْبَالٌ. This form of the plural is also applicable to attributives formed on either of the measure فَعِيلٌ or فَعِيلٌ, as شَرِيفٌ noble, plural أَشْرَافٌ, مَيِّتٌ (orig. مَيِّوْتٌ) dead, plural أَمْوَاتٌ.

It is applicable by the authority of usages to many nouns formed on the measure <sup>فَعْل</sup> of which the medial is not infirm, as <sup>نَهْر</sup>, river, plural <sup>أَنْهَار</sup>; <sup>فَهْم</sup>, understanding, plural <sup>أَفْهَام</sup>; <sup>وَهْم</sup>, imagination, plural <sup>أَوْهَام</sup>; <sup>بِر</sup>, virtuous, plural <sup>أَبْرَار</sup>. It is sometimes also applicable by the authority of usage to nouns of the following measures:

- <sup>فَعْل</sup>, as <sup>رُعْب</sup>, a ripe date, pl. <sup>أَرْطَاب</sup>.  
<sup>فَاعِل</sup>, as <sup>طَافِر</sup>, pure, pl. <sup>أَطْفَار</sup>.  
 ,, as <sup>صَاحِب</sup>, companion, pl. <sup>أَصْحَاب</sup>.  
<sup>فَعْلَة</sup>, as <sup>زَهْرَة</sup>, a blossom, pl. <sup>أَزْهَار</sup>.  
<sup>فَعْلَة</sup>, as <sup>حَدَقَة</sup>, pupil of the eye, pl. <sup>أَحْدَاق</sup>, etc.

### 3. <sup>أَفْعَلَة</sup>

This form of plural is universally applicable to all masculine substantives, having four letters, of which the third is a quiescent infirm letter preceded by a homogeneous vowel-point, as <sup>طَعَام</sup>, food, plural <sup>أَطْعَمَة</sup>; <sup>عَمُود</sup>, a pillar, plural <sup>أَعْمُدَة</sup>; <sup>رَعِيف</sup>, a cake of bread, plural <sup>أَرْعَفَة</sup>.

It is sometimes applicable to nouns of the *surd* class (مضاعف) formed on the measure of <sup>فَعِيل</sup>, as <sup>حَبِيب</sup>, beloved, plural <sup>أَحِبَة</sup>; <sup>جَلِيل</sup>, glorious, plural <sup>أَجَلَة</sup>. Besides this, it is also applicable to many other nouns, as <sup>وَاد</sup> (orig. <sup>وَادِي</sup>), a valley, plural <sup>أَوْدِيَة</sup>; <sup>قَرَط</sup> an earring, plural <sup>أَقْرَطَة</sup>.

4. <sup>فَعْلٌ</sup>فَعْلَةٌ

This form of plural is applicable only by the authority of usage, to nouns of the following measures:—

<sup>فَعْلٌ</sup> فَعْلٌ, as	<sup>صَبِيٌّ</sup> صَبِيٌّ, a boy, pl. <sup>صَبِيَّةٌ</sup> صَبِيَّةٌ.
<sup>فَعْلٌ</sup> فَعْلٌ, as	<sup>وَلَدٌ</sup> وَلَدٌ, a child, pl. <sup>وَلَدَةٌ</sup> وَلَدَةٌ.
	<sup>فَتًى</sup> فَتًى, (orig. <sup>فَتًى</sup> فَتًى) a youth, pl. <sup>فَتَيَّةٌ</sup> فَتَيَّةٌ.
<sup>فَعْلٌ</sup> فَعْلٌ, as	<sup>شَيْخٌ</sup> شَيْخٌ, an old man, pl. <sup>شَيْخَةٌ</sup> شَيْخَةٌ.
<sup>فَعْلٌ</sup> فَعْلٌ, as	<sup>مِلْحٌ</sup> مِلْحٌ, salt, pl. <sup>مِلْحَةٌ</sup> مِلْحَةٌ.
<sup>فَعَالٌ</sup> فَعَالٌ, as	<sup>غُرَّالٌ</sup> غُرَّالٌ, a fawn, pl. <sup>غُرَّالَةٌ</sup> غُرَّالَةٌ.
<sup>فَعَالٌ</sup> فَعَالٌ, as	<sup>غُلَامٌ</sup> غُلَامٌ, a boy, pl. <sup>غُلَامَةٌ</sup> غُلَامَةٌ.

*The Plural of Multitude*

The plural of multitude has been divided into two classes: the second class being distinguished from the first by the term <sup>مَنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ</sup>مَنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ, the last of plurals, for reasons which I shall explain hereafter. The first class has, however, eighteen measures which I am stating below together with the nouns to which they are respectively applicable.

1. <sup>فَعْلٌ</sup>فَعْلٌ

The form is applicable first to the Simple Attributive Adjectives of the measure <sup>أَفْعَلٌ</sup>أَفْعَلٌ, (not to <sup>أَفْعَلٌ</sup>أَفْعَلٌ of <sup>اسم تفضيل</sup>اسم تفضيل); as <sup>أَحْمَرٌ</sup>أَحْمَرٌ, red, plural <sup>أَحْمَرٌ</sup>أَحْمَرٌ; <sup>أَبْيَضٌ</sup>أَبْيَضٌ, white, plural <sup>أَبْيَضٌ</sup>أَبْيَضٌ (orig. <sup>أَبْيَضٌ</sup>أَبْيَضٌ). Secondly, to the Simple Attributive Adjectives of the measure <sup>فَعْلَاءٌ</sup>فَعْلَاءٌ feminine of the above-mentioned <sup>أَفْعَلٌ</sup>أَفْعَلٌ as <sup>أَحْمَرَاءٌ</sup>أَحْمَرَاءٌ, red, plural <sup>أَحْمَرٌ</sup>أَحْمَرٌ. Thirdly, rarely to nouns of the forms <sup>فَعْلٌ</sup>فَعْلٌ, <sup>فَعْلٌ</sup>فَعْلٌ, <sup>فَعْلٌ</sup>فَعْلٌ, <sup>فَعْلَةٌ</sup>فَعْلَةٌ,

etc., as <sup>أُسْدٌ</sup>, a lion, plural <sup>أُسْدٌ</sup>; <sup>دَارٌ</sup> a house, (orig. <sup>دَوْرٌ</sup>), plural <sup>دَوْرٌ</sup>; <sup>سُقْفٌ</sup>, a roof, plural <sup>سُقْفٌ</sup>, <sup>فُلٌّ</sup>, a ship, plural <sup>فُلٌّ</sup>; ships (both numbers being of the same form) <sup>نَاقَةٌ</sup> (orig. <sup>نَوْقَةٌ</sup>), a she-camel; pl. <sup>نُوقٌ</sup>.

## 2. <sup>فُعْلٌ</sup>

This form is applicable to all substantives of the measures <sup>فَعَالٌ</sup>, <sup>فُعَالٌ</sup>, (whose medial and final letters are not homogeneous) as <sup>قُدَالٌ</sup> the back of the head, plural <sup>قُدَالٌ</sup>, <sup>كُتَابٌ</sup> a book, plural <sup>كُتُبٌ</sup>. It is applicable to nouns formed on the measures <sup>فُعُولٌ</sup>, <sup>فُعِيلَةٌ</sup> as <sup>سُرُرٌ</sup> a throne, plural <sup>سُرُرٌ</sup>; <sup>سُفِينَةٌ</sup>, a ship, plural <sup>سُفِينَةٌ</sup>; <sup>رُسُلٌ</sup> a messenger, plural <sup>رُسُلٌ</sup>.

## 3. <sup>فُعِلٌ</sup>

It is applicable to nouns of the measure <sup>فُعِلَةٌ</sup>, as <sup>حِكْمَةٌ</sup>, wisdom, plural <sup>حِكَمٌ</sup>; <sup>سَيْرَةٌ</sup>, character or life, plural <sup>سَيْرٌ</sup>; etc.

## 4. <sup>فُعْلَةٌ</sup>

This form is applicable to the verbal adjectives denoting masculine rational beings, and not having <sup>و</sup> or <sup>ي</sup> for the final radical, as <sup>طَالِبٌ</sup>, a seeker, plural <sup>طُلَبَةٌ</sup>; <sup>سَاحِرٌ</sup> a conjurer, plural <sup>سُحَرَاءٌ</sup>.

## 5. <sup>فُعْلَةٌ</sup>

This form is applicable to all attributives formed on the measure <sup>فُعْلَةٌ</sup>, denoting rational beings, and having the letter <sup>و</sup>,

or *ي* for the last radical, as قَاضٍ (orig. قَاضِي), a judge, plural قُضَاةٌ; غَازٍ (orig. غَازِي), a religious warrior, plural غَازَاةٌ; (original forms قُضِيَّةٌ and غَازِيَّةٌ became such by Rule 4. Appendix).

# 6. نَعْلَةٌ

This form is applicable to nouns of the measures فَعْلٌ, فَعْلٌ, فَعْلٌ by the authority of prescription, as, رُغْلٌ a measure, plural رُغْلَةٌ; قِرْدٌ a monkey, plural قِرْدَةٌ; دِيكٌ a cock, plural دِيكَةٌ; فِيلٌ an elephant, plural فَيْلَةٌ; قِرْطٌ an earring, plural قِرْعَةٌ.

# 7. فَعْلٌ

This form is analogously applicable to both genders of all attributives formed on the measures فَاعِلٌ - فَاعِلَةٌ excepting those belonging to the class of نَاقِصٌ, defective, as كَامِلَةٌ or كَامِلٌ, perfect, plural كَمَلٌ; There are few exceptions for those belonging to the نَاقِصٌ, as عَزِيٌّ (orig. عَزِي) is the plural of غَازِي, a religious warrior.

# 8. فَعْلٌ

This form is analogously applicable to all masculine attributives formed on the measure فَاعِلٌ, not having *و* or *ي* for the final radical, as, حَاكِمٌ, a judge, plural حَكَّامٌ; كَاذِبٌ, an infidel, plural كَفَّارٌ.

# 9. فَعَالٌ

This form is applicable to all nouns, substantive or attributive, formed on the measure فَعْلٌ, not having the letter *ي* for the first

or second radical, as, كَلْبٌ, a dog, plural كِلَابٌ; صَعَبٌ, difficult, plural مِصْعَابٌ. Also it is applicable to all nouns formed on the measure فَعْلٌ, not being of the classes termed مِضَاعَف, *surd* اجوف, *concave*, and ناقص, *defective*; as, جَبَلٌ, a mountain, plural جِبَالٌ. Also applicable to all nouns formed on either of the measures فُعْلَةٌ and فَعْلَةٌ, as خَصْلَةٌ, character, plural خِصَالٌ; رَقَبَةٌ, neck, plural رِقَابٌ; to every substantive noun of the measures فُعْلٌ and فَعْلٌ, of which the medial radical is not and the final one not ي, as رِمَحٌ, a spear, plural رِمَاحٌ; رِقْعَةٌ, an abode plural بَقَاعٌ; to feminine nouns formed on the measure فُعْلَى not the feminine of (اسم التفضيل, اِفْعُلُ) as اُنْثَى female, plural اِنَاثٌ; to all attributives of both genders formed on the measures فُعَيْلٌ and فُعَيْلَةٌ (not having passive sense) as, كَرِيمٌ or كَرِيمَةٌ, generous, plural كِرَامٌ or عِظَمٌ or عِظْمَةٌ, great, plural عِظَامٌ; to attributives formed on the measure فَاعِلٌ, as, نَائِمٌ, sleeping, plural نِيَامٌ; to simple attributive adjectives of the measures فُعْلَانٌ or فُعْلَانٌ, having the feminine فُعْلَانَةٌ, as, نِدَامَانٌ, feminine, نِدَامَانَةٌ repentant, plural نِدَامٌ; خُمُصَانٌ, feminine, خُمُصَانَةٌ, lean. plural خُمُصٌ, and of the measure فُعْلَانٌ having the feminine فُعْلَى, as, عَضْبَانٌ, feminine. عَضْبَى, angry, plural غَضَابٌ.

#### 10. فَعُولٌ

This form is applicable to nouns formed on the measures فُعْلٌ, فُعْلٌ, فُعْلٌ as, بَحْرٌ, sea, plural بَحُورٌ; عِلْمٌ, science, plural

علم; جند, an army, جنود; فعل, فعل, as, أسد, a lion, plural أسود; وعل, a mountain goat, plural وعول; and (rarely) فاعل as, واقف, standing, plural وقوف; شاهد, a witness, pl. شهود.

# 11. فعلان

This form is applicable to nouns of the measure فاعل, as, قضيب, a twig or rod, plural قضبان; خليل, a friend, plural خلان; to those of the measure فاعل (attributive used as a substantive), as, فارس, a horseman, plural فرسان; شاب, a youth, plural شبان; of the measure افعال, having the feminine فعلاء, as, أسمر, brown-colored, plural سمران; أسود, black, plural سودان; أبيض, white, plural بضان (orig. بضان); to nouns of the measure فعل, or فاعل. as, بطن, belly, plural بطنان; بلد, a town, plural بلدان; ذكر, a male, plural ذكران, and of the measure فاعل, as, جدار, wall pl. جدران.

# 12. فعلان

This form is applied to nouns of the form فعل which have the letter و for the medial radical, as, حوت, a fish, plural حيتان, and also to nouns of the measures فعل, فعل, فعل and (rarely) فاعل and فاعل as, ناج (orig. نوج) plural, نجان; فتى (orig. فتى), plural فتيان; أخ, (orig. أخو) plural, أخوان; جرذ, a field mouse, plural جرذان; غلام, a boy, plural غلمان; غزال, a gazelle, plural غزلان; حائط, a wall, plural حيطان. Sometimes (though rarely) to that of فاعل, as, صبي, a boy, plural صبيان.

## 13. فَعِيلٌ

This form is applicable to attributives formed on فَعِيلٌ, فُعِيلٌ, فُعِيلٌ, and أَفْعَلٌ, the last denoting *injuries, defects*, etc., of body or mind, as قَتِيلٌ slain, plural قُتِلَى; مَرِيضٌ, sick, plural مُرَضَى; مَيِّتٌ dead (orig. مَيُوتٌ) plural مُوتَى; هَالِكٌ perishing, plural هُلِكَى; زَمِنٌ, paralytic, plural زَمْنَى; أَحمَقٌ a fool, plural حَمَقَى. Also it is applicable to فُعْلَانٌ as, كَسْلَانٌ lazy, plural كُسْلَى.

## 14. فَعْلَى

This form is applicable only to two words حَجَلٌ a partridge, plural حَجَلَى; and ظُرْنَانٌ a pole cat, plural ظُرْبَى.

## 15. فُعْلَاءُ

This form is applicable to all masculine attributives, belonging to rational beings formed on the measure فَعِيلٌ which are neither ناقصٌ defective, nor أجوفٌ concave, nor مضاعفٌ surd, as فَقِيرٌ poor, plural فَقَرَاءٌ; حَكِيمٌ wise, plural حَكَمَاءُ. Also this form is applied to all masculine attributives of the measure فَعْلٌ with the above restriction. as عَلِمٌ learned, plural عَلَمَاءُ; مُعَلِّمٌ virtuous, plural مُعَلِّمَاءُ.

## 16. أَفْعَاءُ

This form is applicable to masculine attributives of the measure فَعِيلٌ, belonging to rational beings, mostly of the مضاعفٌ surd, and ناقصٌ defective kinds, as صَدِيقٌ a friend, plural



عَنِي; أَجِبَاءُ and أَخْلَاءُ plural حَبِيبٌ and خَلِيلٌ; أَمْدِقَاءُ rich, plural أَغْنِيَاءُ.

17. فُعَالِي

This form is applicable to all substantives of the measures فُعَالِي, as دُعَاوِي, a claim, plural دُعَاوِي; فُتَوِي a legal opinion, plural فُتَوِي. It is applied to attributives of the measure فُعَالِي not the feminine of التفضيل, اسم التفضيل (noun of superiority), as خُنَانِي a hermaphrodite, plural خُنَانِي; to attributives formed on the measures فُعَلَاءُ (which has no masculine of the measure فُعَلَان or فُعَلَان فُعَلَان feminine فُعَلِي); فُعَلَان (feminine فُعَلَانِي); as عَذَرَاءُ virgin, plural عَذَرَاءِي; سُكْرَان (feminine سُكْرَانِي) drunk, plural سُكْرَانِي; كَسْلَان (feminine كَسْلَانِي) slothful, plural كَسْلَانِي; also to the masculine gender of attributives of the measure فُعَلَان (fem. فُعَلَاءُ) as, حَيْرَانٌ perplexed, plural حَيْرَانِي.

18. فُعَالِي

This form is applicable to attributives formed on the measures فُعَالِي as فُرْدِي single, plural فُرْدِي; أَحْمَقِي as أَحْمَقٌ a fool, plural أَحْمَقِي; أُسِيرِي as أُسِيرٌ a prisoner, plural أُسِيرِي; فُعَلَانِي (feminine فُعَلَانِي) as سُكْرَان drunk, plural سُكْرَانِي or فُعَلَانِي (feminine فُعَلَانِي or فُعَلَاءُ) as حَيْرَانٌ penitent, plural حَيْرَانِي.

Remarks. Besides the forms abovementioned, there are several other forms of the plural, which are termed by our native Arabic grammarians اسم الجمع nouns of plural or plural in respect of meaning, because those

forms are held by them to be in reality singular, having the sense of plurals. To avoid these technicalities, they are in fact plurals, but of rare occurrence. However, we here insert several of these forms which are often used:—

فَعِيلٌ — as { حَمَارٌ an ass, plural حُمُرٌ ; حَاجٌ a pilgrim حَاجَجٌ .  
مَاعِزٌ a goat, plural مَعِيزٌ .

فِعُولَةٌ — an بَعْلٌ husband, plural بَعُولَةٌ .

فِعَالَةٌ — as حَجَرٌ a stone, plural حِجَارَةٌ ; مَاحِبٌ a companion, plural مَعَابَةٌ .

فُعُلٌ — as حَلَقَةٌ a ring, plural حُلُقٌ ; خَادِمٌ a servant, plural خُدَمٌ .

فُعُلٌ — as { شَرِبٌ drinking, plural شَرَبٌ ; رَاكِبٌ a horseman, plural رُكَبٌ ;  
مَاحِبٌ a companion, plural مَعَابٌ .

*The منتهى الجمع the last of the plurals, otherwise called جمع الجمع the Plurals of Plurals.*

We have already stated that the second class of the irregular plurals is distinguished by the name منتهى الجمع the last of the plurals ; it is so called because when a noun is pluralised in this form, it cannot be made plural a second time, (which other forms of the plural admit) as كَلَبٌ plural of كَلْبٌ ; is again pluralised into أَكَلَبٌ and so أَقْوَالٌ plural of قَوْلٌ ; may be pluralised a second time, as أَقَاوِيلٌ . When a plural noun is pluralised a

second time, it called جمع الجمع *plural of plurals* ; nevertheless singular nouns are also plurali-ed in these forms directly.

The principal measures of منتهي الجمع *the last of the plurals* are فَعَالِلٌ and فَعَالِلَةٌ to which are correlative several other measures which we shall state here with their respective rules of application.

### 1. فَعَالِلٌ

The form of the plural is applicable to all quadriliteral nouns as عَسْكَرٌ an army, plural عَسَاكِرٌ ; to trilateral nouns rendered correlative to them by the re-duplication of the final radicals as قَرَادِدٌ rough and high ground, plural قَرَادِدٌ .

It is applicable also to nouns composed of more than four letters and if they be primitive only, the final radicals are rejected, and if derivative, the servile letters too as سَفَرَجُلٌ a quince, plural سَفَارِجٌ ; عَنَدَلِيْبٌ nightingale, plural عَنَادِلٌ ; عَنَكَبُوْتٌ a spider, plural عَنَاكِبٌ .

#### (a) أَفَاعِلٌ

To substantives of the measure اِنْفَعَلٌ (i. e., without any regard to the vowel-points) with or without ة as اِصْبَعٌ a finger, pl. اَصَابِعٌ ; اَرْنَبٌ a hare, pl. اَرَابِبٌ ; اُتَمَلَةٌ the tip of a finger, pl. اَتَامِلٌ . To the masc. of اسم التفضيل *noun of superiority* as اَكْبَرٌ greater, pl. اَكْبَرُ .

#### (b) تَفَاعِلٌ

To تَعَارَفٌ or تَعَلَّمَ as تَنْصَبٌ a kind of tree, pl. تَنَابِصٌ ; تَجَرِبَةٌ experience, pl. تَجَارِبٌ .

## (c) مَفَاعِلٌ

To مصدر ميمي (Inf. with *mim*) or اسم الظرف (Noun of Time and Place) and مَفْعَلٌ (Noun of Instrument) as مَطْلَبٌ a desire, pl. مَطَالِبٌ; مَسْجِدٌ a place of worship, pl. مَسَاجِدٌ; مِفْتَاحٌ an instrument of opening, or key, pl. مِفْتَاحٌ. The words مَطْفُلٌ a woman with child, pl. مَطْفُلٌ and مَعَانٍ beauty, pl. مَعَانٍ, are exceptions.

## (d) فُعَالٌ

To فُعَيْلَةٌ as فَضَيْلَةٌ excellence, pl. فُضَائِلٌ; خَطِيئَةٌ an error, pl. خَطَايَا (orig. خَطَائِي), to فُعُولَةٌ, فُعُولٌ, فُعَالٌ, and فُعَيْلٌ, and فُعَيْلَةٌ as رُكُوبَةٌ, a riding camel, pl. رُكَّابٌ; عَجُوزٌ an old woman, pl. عَجَائِزٌ; دَعَامٌ a pillar, pl. دَعَائِمٌ; دَكِيلٌ an argument, pl. دَلَائِلٌ; خَزِينَةٌ a treasury, pl. خَزَائِنٌ.

## (e) فَوَاعِلٌ

To فَاعِلٌ (substantive or attributive either peculiar to the female sex or to irrational being) as سَاحِلٌ the sea-shore, pl. سَوَاحِلٌ; حَامِلٌ a pregnant woman, pl. حَوَامِلٌ; نَاقٌ a braying animal or ass, pl. نَوَاقٍ. To فَاعِلَةٌ, فَاعِلٌ, فُعُولٌ, فَوَعْلَةٌ as فَاكِهَةٌ a fruit, pl. فَوَاكِهٌ; قَالِبٌ a mould, pl. قَوَالِبٌ; كَوْكَبٌ a star, pl. كَوَاكِبٌ; صَوْمَعَةٌ a monastery, pl. صَوَامِعٌ.

## (f) فُعَالِيٌّ or فُعَالٌ

To فُعَالِيٌّ, فُعَالِيٌّ, فُعَالِيٌّ, فُعَالِيٌّ etc., as صَحْرَاءٌ a desert, pl. صَحَارٍ or صَحَارِي; دَعَاوِيٌّ claim, pl. دَعَاوٍ or دَعَاوِيٌّ; سُرْبَةٌ a kept slave-girl, pl. سُرَابٍ or سُرَابِيٌّ; تِرْقُوتَةٌ the collar-bone, pl. تِرَاقِيٌّ or تِرَاقِيٌّ.

*Ots.* The measure **فَعَالٍ** was originally **فَعَالِي** which becomes such by Rule 15, Appendix.

(g) **فَيَاعِلُ**

To **فَيَعِلُ** as **مَيَقِلُ** a polisher, pl. **مَيَاقِلُ** etc.

(h) **فُعَاعِلُ**

To **فُعَلُ** (without any regard to vowel-points) as **خُرُقٌ** inactive, pl. **خُرَاقُ**.

(i) **فُعَالِنُ**

To **فُعَانُ** (without any regard to vowel-points) as **فُرْسُنُ** a camel's hoof, pl. **فُرَاسِنُ**.

(j) **فُعَاوِلُ**

To **فُعُولُ** as **جَدَوَلُ** a rivulet, pl. **جَدَاوِلُ**.

(k) **يَقَاعِلُ**

To **يَقَعِلُ** as **يَلْمُقُ** a species of garment, pl. **يَلَامِقُ**.

2. **فَعَالِلُ**

It is applicable to every noun composed of five letters or more of which the penultimate letter is a servile infirm one, preceded by a homogeneous vowel-point; as **قَرَطَاسٌ** paper, pl. **قَرَطَاسَاتٌ**; **عَصْفُورٌ** a sparrow, pl. **عَصَافِيرُ**; **قَنْدِيلٌ** a candle, pl. **قَنَادِيلُ** etc.

## (a) أَفَاعِلٌ

To all nouns of which the first letter is a servile *hamzuh* and the penultimate a servile infirm letter, as اسْكَانٌ a shoemaker, pl. اسْكَافٌ ; اَقْلِيمٌ a climate, pl. اَقَالِيمٌ ; اسْطُورَةٌ a story, pl. اسْطَاغِيرٌ etc.

*Exceptions.* اَحَادِيثٌ a saying, pl. اَحَادِيثٌ ; باطلٌ false, pl. اِبَاطِيلٌ ; عُرْوَةٌ pole of a tent, pl. اَعَارِضٌ etc.

## (b) تَفْعِيلٌ

To nouns of which the first letter is ت and the penultimate a servile infirm letter preceded by a homogeneous vowel point, as تَبَالٌ a figure, pl. تَبَائِلٌ ; تَصْوِيرٌ a picture, pl. تَصَاوِيرٌ .

## (c) مَفَاعِلٌ

To مَفْعَالٌ , مَفْعِيلٌ , مَفْعُولٌ (rare) مَفْعِلٌ , as مِفْتَاحٌ a key, pl. مِفْتَاحَاتٌ ; مَسْكِينٌ poor, pl. مَسَاكِينٌ ; مَشْهُورٌ celebrated, pl. مَشَاهِيرٌ ; مَرَضِعٌ a wet-nurse, pl. مَرَاضِعٌ ; مُنْكَرٌ vicious, pl. مُنْكَرَاتٌ .

## (d) فَوَاعِلٌ

To every noun of which the second and the fourth letters are servile infirm letters preceded by homogeneous vowel-points, as خَاقَانٌ an emperor, pl. خَوَاقِينٌ ; قَانُونٌ a canon, pl. قَوَانِينٌ ; قَارُورَةٌ a glass bottle, pl. قَوَارِيرٌ ; دِيْوَانٌ a register-office, pl. دَوَاوِينٌ ; طَوَامِيرٌ a voluminous record, pl. طَوَامِيرٌ etc.

(c) فُعَالِي

This form is applicable to all substantives (not to relative adjectives) of the measure فُعَالِي or فُعَالِي, as كُرْسِي a chair, pl. كُرَاسِي; كُرْكِي a crane, pl. كُرَاكِي.

3. فُعَالِلَةٌ<sup>1</sup>

This form with its correlative فُعَالِلَةٌ is applicable to nouns derived from foreign languages or to relative adjectives as فِيلَسُوفٌ a philosopher, pl. فُلَاسِيفَةٌ; فِرْعَوْنٌ pharaoh, pl. فِرْعَانَةٌ; أَرْمَنِي an Armenian, pl. أَرَامِنَةٌ; بَرُطَنِي a Briton, pl. بَرَامِكَةٌ; بَرَامِكِي related to the family of Barmak, pl. بَرَامِكَةٌ; أَشْعَرِي belonging to أَشْعَر name of the founder of a school of theology, pl. أَشَاعِرَةٌ; قَيْصَرٌ a Cæsar, pl. قَبَاصِرَةٌ; كَسْرِي Arabicism of كَسْرٌ a king of Persia, pl. كَاسِرَةٌ; أَسْقَفٌ a bishop, pl. أَسَاقِفَةٌ. Also it is occasionally applicable to substantives and attributives of five or more letters, of which the penultimate letter is a servile one preceded by a homogeneous vowel-point, as أَسْنَادٌ a master, pl. أَسَانِدَةٌ; تَلْمِيذٌ a disciple, pl. تَلَامِيذَةٌ; جَبَّارٌ most powerful, pl. جَبَابِرَةٌ; مَلَكٌ an angel (original مَلَيْكٌ), pl. مَلَائِكَةٌ.

*Irregular Formation of the Plural.*

The plurals of some nouns are quite different in words from their singulars.

<sup>1</sup> According to some grammarians, this form is not reckoned as one of منتهى الجموع since it admits of *tanween* which the other forms of it do not admit.

They are called by our grammarians *الجمع من غير لفظه*. These are *إِمرأة* a woman, pl. *نساء*, *نِسوة* or *نِسوان*; *ذو* a possessor, pl. *الو*; *خُلْد* a mole, pl. *مناجد*.

But there are some plurals of this class though apparently formed anomalously, yet their roots may be traced to be uniform with those of their singulars by referring to their original forms, a- *أُم* mother (original *امهة*), pl. *أُمَّهَات*; *شاة* a goat (original *شاة*), pl. *شِبَاءة*; *مأنة* (original *مأة* or *موة*) pl. *مِياة* or *أَمِواة*; *فَم* mouth (original *فوة*), pl. *أَفِواة*.

#### *The gender of nouns. تذكير وتانيث*

In Arabic, nouns have two genders: masculine and feminine, but there are, some nouns which are common to both genders.

The terminations of the feminine gender are *ة* and the two *alifs* called ( *الف ممدودة* ) *prolonged alif* *آء* and ( *الف مقصورة* ) *shortened alif* *ى*. Every noun having one of these terminations must be regarded as feminine, as *وَالِدَةٌ* mother, *ظُلْمَةٌ* darkness, *ذِكْرٌ* admonition, *حُبْلَى* pregnant woman, *صَحْرَاءُ* desert, *وَرْدَاءُ* a fem. dove, except when the noun signifies a male animal, in which case it must be considered as masculine, as *طُلْعَةٌ* name of a man, *عَلَامَةٌ* a very learned man. There are, however, many nouns in Arabic, which though they have no feminine terminations, are used as feminine. These are of two classes.

1st. Feminine by signification. ( *المؤنث المعنوي* )

2nd. Feminine by usage. ( *المؤنث السماعي* )

Under the first head, come all those nouns, common as well



as proper, which denote the female sex, as <sup>مُرُوسٌ</sup> mother, <sup>عُجُوزٌ</sup> bride, <sup>مَرْيَمٌ</sup> an old woman, <sup>زَيْنَبٌ</sup> Mary name of a lady, etc. Of the 2nd class, those which are reducible to rules, are as follow :—

(1) Names of countries and towns, because the words <sup>أَرْضٌ</sup>, <sup>قَرْيَةٌ</sup> etc. (which are feminine) are prefixed to them, pressed or understood, as <sup>مِصْرُ</sup> Egypt, <sup>قَبْرُسُ</sup> Cyprus, <sup>شَامُ</sup> Syria, etc., i.e., <sup>أَرْضُ شَامٍ</sup>, <sup>قَرْيَةُ قَبْرُسٍ</sup>, <sup>مَدِينَةُ مِصْرٍ</sup>.

(2) Nouns denoting the winds and different kinds of fire, as <sup>رِيحٌ</sup> wind, <sup>نَسِيمٌ</sup> breeze, <sup>نَارٌ</sup> fire, <sup>قَبُولٌ</sup> the east wind, <sup>دُبُورٌ</sup> the west wind, <sup>شِمَالٌ</sup> the north wind, <sup>جَنُوبٌ</sup> the south wind, <sup>سَعِيرٌ</sup> and <sup>جَعِيمٌ</sup> blazing fire, <sup>سُقْرٌ</sup> hell fire, etc.

(3) Nouns denoting the double members of the body, as <sup>يَدٌ</sup> hand, <sup>رِجْلٌ</sup> leg, <sup>قَدَمٌ</sup> foot, <sup>عَيْنٌ</sup> eye, etc.

(4) All irregular plurals <sup>مَكْشَرٌ</sup> جمع as <sup>أَقْوَالٌ صَحِيحَةٌ</sup> correct sayings, <sup>قُلُوبٌ ضَيِّقَةٌ</sup> narrow hearts.

Besides these, there are many other nouns which are used as feminine. They are quite anomalous, being not reducible to rules and depending only on usage, as <sup>أَرْضٌ</sup> the earth, <sup>شَمْسٌ</sup> the sun, <sup>نَفْسٌ</sup> soul, <sup>رُوحٌ</sup> spirit, <sup>دَارٌ</sup> a house, <sup>خَمْرٌ</sup> wine, etc. There are also some nouns which are common to both genders, as <sup>مَرَاطٌ</sup> a road, <sup>سُوقٌ</sup> a market, <sup>سَمَاءٌ</sup> the heaven, <sup>طَرِيقٌ</sup> and <sup>سَبِيلٌ</sup> road, <sup>قَدْرٌ</sup> a kettle, <sup>عُنُقٌ</sup> the neck, <sup>لِسَانٌ</sup> the tongue, <sup>فَرَسٌ</sup> a horse, <sup>نَخْلٌ</sup> a date-tree, <sup>إصْبَعٌ</sup> a finger, etc. Among the feminine nouns by usage, those of the trilateral class are considered to have the

feminine termination ة understood, since they assume it in their diminutive forms, as اَرْضٌ, اَرْضَةٌ, اَرْضِيَّةٌ; شَمْسٌ, شَمِيسَةٌ, شَمِيسِيَّةٌ etc.

Again among all feminine nouns in genral those denoting the female sex of animals are distinguished by the term المونث الحقيقي *the real feminine*, and those which are not such, are called المونث الغير الحقيقي *the assumed feminine*, or المونث اللفظي *the verbal feminine*.

#### *Defined and undefined nouns.*

Defined nouns are first all common nouns, having the definite article ال prefixed to them, as الرَّجُلُ the man, الْفَرَسُ the horse, etc. Secondly, all proper nouns, as جعفر, زيد etc. Thirdly, personal, demonstrative and relative pronouns. Fourthly, those muzáf (مضاف) to any noun belonging to any of the foregoing classes. The rest are what are called *undefined nouns*.

#### *Article.*

The Arabs have only the definite article ال <sup>1</sup> *al* the, which is not liable to any change on account of number or gender. The place of the indefinite article, however, is supplied by a تنوين *tanween*, called تنوين التنكير *tanween ut tankir*, as رجل a man. If the substantive to which the article is prefixed, happens to begin with any of the solar letters, <sup>2</sup> viz., ض ص ش س ذ ز ث ت,

<sup>1</sup> Hence several words in English being of Arabic origin are still found with the Arabic article *al*, as Algebra الجبر, alembic الانبيق, alcohol الكحل

<sup>2</sup> The solar letters are called حروف شمسي and the rest lunar حروف قمری

ن ل ظ ط (see page 45), the ل of the article assumes the sound of the first latter of the noun both coalescing under the sign *tashdid*, thus التُّرْكُ the Turk, الشَّمْسُ the sun, النُّورُ the light, etc.

In this case, however, the ل must always be written in its own form though its sound is altered. On prefixing an article to a noun, the final *tanween* (*nūnation*) is suppressed as الرَّجُلُ = رَجُلٌ.

*Obs.* The definite article ال is called لام العهد when it restricts the sense to a certain individual, as اَتَى الرَّجُلُ the man has come, that is, a particular man. It is also termed لام الجنس generic *lām*, when the whole species or genus of the thing denoted by the noun to which it is prefixed, is meant; as, الرَّجُلُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ man is better than woman. In the former case, the noun preceded by ال should be translated into English by a noun with *the*, and in the latter case by a noun without any article. A third sort of لام *lām* is called لام الاستغراق comprehending *lām*, which denotes all individuals of the noun to which it is prefixed, as اَلْإِنْسَانُ فَاتٍ man is mortal

#### *The cases of nouns.*

There are three cases in Arabic : Nominative, Accusative, and Genitive.<sup>1</sup> The marks by which these cases are severally distinguished, differ in different classes of nouns. There are, however, several nouns which do not admit of case-marks,

---

<sup>1</sup> Nominative حالة فاعلي , Accusative حالة مفعولي and Genitive حالة اضافي . جرى

and are called مبني (*mabni*) indeclinable. Those that admit of case-marks are called معرب (*mu'rab*) declinable.

*Obs.* The term *indeclinable* has been erroneously applied by Mr. W. Wright and other Anglo-Arabic grammarians to the class of declinable nouns, termed by Arab grammarians غير المنصرف (*ghair-ul-munsarif*).

The different kinds of case-marks which are used in different classes of nouns are as follow:—

(1) In all nouns of the singular number (not of the class termed غير المنصرف which will be explained hereafter); in all irregular plurals, جمع مكسر excepting the class termed منتهي الجمع plural of plurals and in all those nouns of the defective class (ناقص) whose penultimate letter is quiescent, the sign of the Nominative is *dammah* َ that of the Accusative is *fathah* ِ of the Genitive is *kasrah* ِ thus:—

Nom.		Acc.		Gen.
رَجُلٌ	a man	رَجُلًا		رَجُلٍ
رِجَالٌ	men	رِجَالًا		رِجَالٍ
دَلْوٌ	a bucket	دَلْوًا		دَلْوٍ
ظَبْيٌ	a deer	ظَبْيًا		ظَبْيٍ

(2) In nouns of the dual number and in the word اثنان, two case-marks are, for the Nominative ان — and for the Accusative and Genitive, ين — thus:—

Nom.		Acc.		Gen.	
رَجُلَانِ	two men	رَجُلَيْنِ		رَجُلَيْنِ	
إِنْتَانِ	two	إِنْتَيْنِ		إِنْتَيْنِ	

In those nouns of the dual number to which pronouns are affixed or which are مضاف , *muzáf* to some other nouns and in the words كِلَاهُمَا , and كِلْتَاهُمَا both, the sign of the Nominative اُ alif and of the Accusative and Genitive cases ي thus:—

Nom.		Acc.		Gen.	
ابْنَاهُمَا	their (dual) two sons	ابْنَيْهِمَا		ابْنَيْهِمَا	
ابْنَا زَيْدٍ	Zaid's two sons	ابْنَيْ زَيْدٍ		ابْنَيْ زَيْدٍ	
كِلَاهُمَا	both	كِلَيْهِمَا		كِلَيْهِمَا	
كِلْتَاهُمَا	both	كِلْتَيْهِمَا		كِلْتَيْهِمَا	

(3) In regular plural nouns of the masculine gender, and in the words ثَلَاثُونَ , عَشْرُونَ , etc., the case-mark for the Nominative is و \_ and for the Accusative and Genitive ي thus:—

Nom.		Acc.		Gen.	
مُسْلِمُونَ	Moslems	مُسْلِمِينَ		مُسْلِمِينَ	
عَشْرُونَ	twenty	عَشْرِينَ		عَشْرِينَ	

In the regular plural nouns mentioned above when they are مضاف *muzáf* to some other nouns, or when pronouns are affixed

to them, and in the words **أَلُو** possessors, the case-mark for the Nominative is **و** and for Genitive and Accusative **ي** thus:—

Nom.	Acc.	Gen.
<b>مُسْلِمُو الْهِنْدِ</b> Moslems of India	<b>مُسْلِمِي الْهِنْدِ</b>	<b>مُسْلِمِي الْهِنْدِ</b>
<b>أَلُو مَالٍ</b> Possessor of wealth	<b>أَلِي مَالٍ</b>	<b>أَلِي مَالٍ</b>

(4) In these six nouns, **أَب** a father, **أَخ** a brother, **حَم** a father-in-law, **هَن** an obscene thing, **فَم** (for **فَوْه**) mouth, and **ذُو** possessor, when they are **مُضَاف** *muzaf* to other nouns (and when the 1st personal pronoun **ي** is not suffixed to them) the case-mark for the Nominative is **و**, for the Accusative **ا** and for the Genitive **ي** thus:—

Nom.	Acc.	Gen.
<b>أَبُو زَيْدٍ</b> Zaid's father	<b>أَبَا زَيْدٍ</b>	<b>أَبِي زَيْدٍ</b>
<b>أَخُو زَيْدٍ</b> Zaid's brother	<b>أَخَا زَيْدٍ</b>	<b>أَخِي زَيْدٍ</b>
<b>حَمُو زَيْدٍ</b> Zaid's father-in-law	<b>حَمَا زَيْدٍ</b>	<b>حَمِي زَيْدٍ</b>
<b>هَنُو هِنْدٍ</b> Hind's—	<b>هَنَا هِنْدٍ</b>	<b>هَنِي هِنْدٍ</b>
<b>فُو زَيْدٍ</b> Zaid's mouth	<b>فَا زَيْدٍ</b>	<b>فِي زَيْدٍ</b>
<b>ذُو مَالٍ</b> Possessor of property	<b>ذَا مَالٍ</b>	<b>ذِي مَالٍ</b>

(5) In the regular plural nouns of the feminine gender, the sign of the Nominative is *ḍammah* **ا** of the Accusative and Genitive *kasrah* **ا** thus:—

Nom.	Acc.	Gen.
<b>مُسْلِمَاتٌ</b> Female Moslems	<b>مُسْلِمَاتٌ</b>	<b>مُسْلِمَاتٌ</b>

(Obs. The regular plurals of the masculine and feminine genders and the dual number have *dipotate* case-marks, i.e., the Accusative and Genitive have the same sign.

(6) In those nouns which have for their final letter **ي** preceded by a letter moved with *kasrah*, the sign of the Nominative and that of the Genitive are *ḍammah* and *kasrah* understood, but that of the Accusative is *fathah* expressed :—

Nom.		Acc.	Gen.
قَاضِي	Judge	قَاضِيًا	قَاضِي
القَاضِي	The Judge	القَاضِي	القَاضِي

(7) In those nouns whose final letter is **ي** or **ا** the case-marks are all understood, as **عَصَا** and **مُوسَى** thus :—

Nom.		Acc.	Gen.
مُوسَى	Moses	مُوسَى	مُوسَى

There are certain classes of **معرب** declinable nouns, termed **غَيْرُ الْمُنْصَرَفِ** *ghair-ul-munsarif*, which do not admit of *tanween* and have *dipotate* case-marks, i.e., have the same sign for Accusative and Genitive cases, i.e., *fathah* without *tanween*.

1. All plurals of the class **مَنْتَهَى الْجَمْعِ**, i.e., plurals of the forms **فُعَالِيلُ** **فُعَالِيلُ** **مَفَاعِيلُ** **مَفَاعِيلُ** **فَوَاعِيلُ** **فَوَاعِيلُ** etc. as **عُنَادِلُ** **عُنَادِلُ** etc.

2. All adjectives of the form **أَفْعُلُ**, as **أَسْوَدُ** black, **أَبْيَضُ** white, etc.

3. Proper names ending in ة as طَلْحَة, name of a man مَكَّة, the city of Mecca, زَيْدَة, name of a princess, etc.

4. Proper nouns of the feminine gender not ending in ة but either of foreign origin, or consisting of four letters, or of three only, such that the medial one is movable ; as مِصْر Egypt, مَاء name of a town in Turkey in Asia, زَيْنَب name of a lady, سَقْر name of a particular part of hell.

5. Proper nouns of foreign origin which consist either of four letters or three only, such that the medial one is movable ; as اِبْرَاهِيْم Abraham, جِبْرِئِيل Gabriel, اِسْحَاق Ishaq, شَدْر name of a fort, etc. But those consisting of three letters of which the second is not movable, are not included under the classes غير المنصرف ; as نُوْح Noah, لُوط Lot, etc.

6. All common nouns and adjectives ending either in *alif-ul mamdūdah*, prolonged *alif* (آ), or *alif-ul-maqṣūrah*, shortened *alif* (ا) ; as, حَمْرَاء, red, صَفْرَاء, yellow, مَحْرَاء, a desert, حُبْلَى, a pregnant woman.

7. Adjectives of the form فُعْلَانُ, of which the feminine is فُعْلَانَةٌ as سَكْرَانُ, fem. سَكْرَانَةٌ, drunk.

8. Proper nouns ending in ى as سَقِيَانُ عُمَيَّانُ, etc.

9. Proper nouns whose forms resemble those peculiar to verbs, or of any of the persons of the artist, as شَمْرُ name of a horse, شَلَمُ Jerusalem, ضَرْبُ name of a man, أَحْمَدُ Ahmed, يَزِيدُ Yazid, تَدْمِرُ Tadmīr (palmyra).



10. Distributive numerals of the forms مُفْعَلٌ, فُعَالٌ, as اَخرٌ three by three, and likewise the words اَخرٌ plural of اَخرٌ, another, and جَمْعٌ, plural of جَمْعَةٌ, all.

11. Proper nouns of the measure فَعْلٌ supposed to have been derived from common nouns or adjectives without any etymological rule; as, عَمْرٌ Umar, زُفَرٌ Zufar, (supposed to have been derived from عَامِرٌ and زَافِرٌ).

*Declension of the ghair-ul-munawrif غير المنصرف*

Nom	Acc.	Gen.
مَسَاجِدُ	مَسَاجِدَ	مَسَاجِدِ
أَسْوَدُ	أَسْوَدَ	أَسْوَدِ
طَلْحَةُ	طَلْحَةَ	طَلْحَةِ
زَيْنَبُ	زَيْنَبَ	زَيْنَبِ
سَقَرُ	سَقَرِ	سَقَرِ
إِسْرَاهِيمُ	إِسْرَاهِيمَ	إِسْرَاهِيمِ
شَقَرُ	شَقَرِ	شَقَرِ
صَحْرَاءُ	صَحْرَاءَ	صَحْرَاءِ
سَكَرَانُ	سَكَرَانَ	سَكَرَانِ
عَثْمَانُ	عَثْمَانَ	عَثْمَانِ
شَلَمُ	شَلَمَ	شَلَمِ
أَحْمَدُ	أَحْمَدَ	أَحْمَدِ
ثَلَاثُ	ثَلَاثَ	ثَلَاثِ
أَخَرُ	أَخَرِ	أَخَرِ
جَمْعُ	جَمْعِ	جَمْعِ
عَمْرُ	عَمْرِ	عَمْرِ

When any noun of this class is preceded by the definite article *ال*, or when it is مضاف to some other noun, it admits of *kasrah*, and becomes منصرف triptote as:—

Nom.	Acc.	Gen.
الْمَسَاجِدُ	المساجِدَ	المساجِدِ
مَسَاجِدُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ	مَسَاجِدَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ	مَسَاجِدِ الْمُسْلِمِينَ

### Personal Pronouns. ضمائر

These are of two classes, the isolated, and the affixed. The isolated personal pronouns are the following:—

#### 1. Nominative. فاعلي

Person.	Masculine.			Feminine.		
	Sing.	Du.	Pl.	Sing.	Du.	Pl.
3rd.	هُوَ	هُمَا	هُمْ	هِيَ	هُمَا	هِنَّ
2nd.	أَنْتَ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتُمْ	أَنْتِ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتُنَّ
1st.	أَنَا	نَحْنُ	نَحْنُ	أَنَا	نَحْنُ	نَحْنُ

#### 2. Accusative مفعولي

Person	Masculine.			Feminine.		
	Sing.	Du.	Pl.	Sing.	Du.	Pl.
3rd.	إِيَّاهُ	إِيَّاهُمَا	إِيَّاهُمْ	إِيَّاهَا	إِيَّاهُمَا	إِيَّاهُنَّ
2nd.	إِيَّاكَ	إِيَّاكُمَا	إِيَّاكُمْ	إِيَّاكِ	إِيَّاكُمَا	إِيَّاكُنَّ
1st.	إِيَّايَ	إِيَّانَا	إِيَّانَا	إِيَّايَ	إِيَّانَا	إِيَّانَا

*Obs.* The isolated Accusative pronouns are not used but when they are placed before the verb, as in this passage of the Qurán اِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ Thee we adore ; or when another word intervenes between the verb and the pronoun, as زَيْدٌ ضَرَبَ الْيَوْمَ اِيَّاهُ Zaid beat him this day.

### *The Affixed Pronouns. ضمائر متصل*

The affixed pronouns are those which are always suffixed to or joined to a verb, a noun, or a preposition. When joined to a verb, they are either in the Nominative or in the Accusative case and when joined to a noun or a preposition, they are always in the Genitive case.

#### (1) *The Affixed Pronouns, Nominative. ضمائر متصل فاعلي*

These are of two kinds, *expressed* بارز and *implied* مستتر. The *expressed* are in fact the terminations of the verb ; as (ت) in فَعَلْتُ, (تم) in فَعَلْتُمَا, (تما) in فَعَلْتُمَا, (نا) in فَعَلْتُ, (ت) in فَعَلْتِ, (تم) in فَعَلْتُمْ, (ن) in فَعَلْنَا, (وا) in فَعَلُوا, (ا) in فَعَلْتُ, (نن) in فَعَلْتُمْ.

The *implied* are those which are understood, before the singular masculine and feminine 3rd person of the preterite ; as, فَعَلْتُ and فَعَلْتِ i.e., هُوَ فَعَلَ and هِيَ فَعَلَتْ ; before the singular and plural 1st person, the singular 2nd person, the singular 3rd person masculine and feminine of the aorist as اَفْعَلُ i.e., اَنَا اَفْعَلُ i.e., نَفْعَلُ i.e., هِيَ نَفْعَلُ i.e., هُوَ يَفْعَلُ i.e., اَنْتَ تَفْعَلُ i.e., نَفْعَلُ i.e., نَحْنُ نَفْعَلُ and before the imperative as اَفْعَلْ i.e., اَنْتَ اَفْعَلْ.

(2) *The Affixed Pronouns, Accusative.*

Person.	Sing.	Du.	Plural.
3rd. mas	هُ as ضَرَبْتَهُ	هُمَا as ضَرَبْتُمَا	هُمْ as ضَرَبْتُمُ
„ fem.	هَا as ضَرَبْتَهَا	هُمَا as ضَرَبْتُمَا	هِنَّ as ضَرَبْتُنَّ
2nd. mas.	كَ as ضَرَبْتُكَ	كُمَا as ضَرَبْتُكُمَا	كُم as ضَرَبْتُكُمْ
„ fem.	كَ as ضَرَبْتُكِ	كُمَا as ضَرَبْتُكُمَا	كُنَّ as ضَرَبْتُكُنَّ
1st. mas and fem.	نِي as ضَرَبْتُنِي	نَا as ضَرَبْنَا	نَا as ضَرَبْنَا

(3) *The Affixed Pronouns, Genitive.*

(a) Suffixed to a noun. كِتَابٌ 'a book'.

Person.	Sing.	Du.	Plural
3rd masc	هُ as كِتَابُهُ his book	هُمَا as كِتَابُهُمَا	هُمْ as كِتَابُهُم
„ fem.	هَا as كِتَابُهَا her book	هُمَا as كِتَابُهُمَا	هِنَّ as كِتَابُهُنَّ
2nd masc.	كَ as كِتَابُكَ thy book	كُمَا as كِتَابُكُمَا	كُم as كِتَابُكُمْ
„ fem.	كَ as كِتَابُكِ thy book	كُمَا as كِتَابُكُمَا	كُنَّ as كِتَابُكُنَّ
1st com.	إِي as كِتَابِي my book	نَا as كِتَابُنَا	نَا as كِتَابُنَا

(b) Suffixed to a preposition (ل to, or for).

Person.	Sing.	Du.	Plural
3rd. masc.	هُ as لَهُ to, for him	هُمَا as لَهُمَا	هُمْ as لَهُم
„ fem.	هَا as لَهَا to, for her	هُمَا as لَهُمَا	هِنَّ as لِهِنَّ
2nd. masc.	كَ as لَكَ to, for thee	كُمَا as لَكُمَا	كُم as لَكُمْ
„ fem.	كَ as لَكَ to, for thee	كُمَا as لَكُمَا	كُنَّ as لَكُنَّ
1st. masc. and fem.	ي as لِي to, for me	نَا as لَنَا	نَا as لَنَا

*Obs.* When the suffixes هُمَا, هُم, هُنَّ, follow a *kasrah* or ي the ة takes *kasrah*; as, مِنْ رَبِّهِ إِلَيْهِ فِيهِ. The final م of the pronominal suffixes تُمْ and كُمْ take ء followed by و when they are followed by another pronominal suffix; as ضَرَبْتُمُوهُ, you beat him; أَعْطَيْتُكُمْوَهُ, I gave it to you.

*Demonstrative Pronouns.* أسماء اشارة

These are of two kinds:—

(1) Those which indicate near objects, *qarib* viz:—

Sing	Du.	Plural.
Masc. ذَا this,	ذَيْنِ or ذَانِ	أُولَئِكَ or أَوْلَاءُ
Fem. تَهْ, تَاهِي, تَيْ, نَا ذَهْ, ذَهِي, ذِي	كَيْنِ or كَانِ	

The particle هَا which is written ه is often prefixed to the 1st class, as:—

Sing.	Du.	Plural.
Masc. هَذَا this	هَاتَيْنِ or هَاتَانِ	هَؤُلَاءِ they
Fem. هَذِي or هَذِه	هَاتِي or هَاتِه	

(2) Those which indicate remote objects, which are formed by adding 'ك' or 'ل' to the first kind. They are the following:—

Sing.	Du.	Plural.
Masc. ذَلِكَ or ذَاكَ	ذَئِكَ or ذَانِكَ	أُولَئِكَ or أُولَآكَ
Fem. تَالِكَ or تَالِك	تَئِكَ or تَانِكَ	



in interrogation, and it governs the substantive in the genitive case as *أَيُّ كِتَابٍ* What book ? *أَيَّةُ امْرَأَةٍ* Which woman ?

Again these three words ( *أَيَّ*, *مَا*, *مَنْ* ) are sometimes used as conditional particles (*vide Syntax*).

When used as relative it is equivalent to *الَّذِي* who or which, as *اَضْرِبْ أَيَّ رَجُلٍ فِي الدَّارِ* i. e., *اَضْرِبْ الرَّجُلَ الَّذِي فِي الدَّارِ* Beat the man who is in the house.

It is always used as *muzáf* to a noun or pronoun.

### Distributive Pronouns.

There is no distributive pronoun in Arabic, the place of it is, however, supplied by the word *كُلُّ* governing an undefined noun ( *اسم نكرة* ) in the genitive ; as, *كُلُّ رَجُلٍ* each man, *كُلُّوَاحِدٍ* each or every one. But when the word is *muzáf* ( *مضاف* ) to a defined plural noun or to a pronoun, it has the signification of *all* and *whole*, as *كُلُّ الرِّجَالِ* all men, *كُلُّهُ* whole of it, *كُلُّكُمْ* all of them.

### THE NUMERALS.

#### Cardinal Numbers.

Eng.	Arabic	Masc.	Fem.
1	١	{ <i>وَاحِدٌ</i> <i>أَحَدٌ</i>	{ <i>وَاحِدَةٌ</i> <i>أَحَدَى</i>
2	٢	<i>اِثْنَانِ</i>	{ <i>اِثْنَانِ</i> <i>اِثْنَانِ</i>

Eng.	Arabic	Masc.	Fem.
3	٣	ثَلَاثٌ	ثَلَاثٌ
4	٤	أَرْبَعٌ	أَرْبَعٌ
5	٥	خَمْسَةٌ	خَمْسٌ
6	٦	سِتَّةٌ	سِتٌّ
7	٧	سَبْعَةٌ	سَبْعٌ
8	٨	ثَمَانِيَةٌ	ثَمَانٍ or ثَمَانِيٌ
9	٩	تِسْعَةٌ	تِسْعٌ
10	١٠	عَشْرَةٌ	عَشْرٌ

*Obs.* From *three* to *ten* the feminine termination ة is added to the masculine, while the feminine is irregularly left without ة.

From *eleven* to *nineteen* both inclusive, the cardinal numbers are composed of units and of the number *ten* which then is regularly in the masculine عَشْرٌ and in the feminine عَشْرَةٌ, the final letters of both the parts having a *fathah* without *tanween* in all cases, except اثْنَا عَشَرَ which becomes إِنْثَى عَشَرَ in the accusative and genitive cases.

Eng.	Arabic	Masc.	Fem.
11	١١	أَحَدٌ عَشْرٌ	أَحَدٌ عَشْرَةٌ
12	١٢	اثْنَا عَشْرٌ	اثْنَا عَشْرَةٌ
13	١٣	ثَلَاثَةٌ عَشْرٌ	ثَلَاثَةٌ عَشْرَةٌ



Eng.	Arabic	Masc.	Fem.
14	١٤	أَرْبَعَةُ عَشَرَ	أَرْبَعُ عَشْرَةَ
15	١٥	خَمْسَةُ عَشَرَ	خَمْسُ عَشْرَةَ
16	١٦	سِتَّةُ عَشَرَ	سِتُّ عَشْرَةَ
17	١٧	سَبْعَةُ عَشَرَ	سَبْعُ عَشْرَةَ
18	١٨	ثَمَانِيَةُ عَشَرَ	ثَمَانِيُ عَشْرَةَ
19	١٩	تِسْعَةُ عَشَرَ	تِسْعُ عَشْرَةَ

*The Decades from Twenty upwards.*

20	٢٠	عِشْرُونَ
30	٣٠	ثَلَاثُونَ
40	٤٠	أَرْبَعُونَ
50	٥٠	خَمْسُونَ
60	٦٠	سِتُّونَ
70	٧٠	سَبْعُونَ
80	٨٠	ثَمَانُونَ
90	٩٠	تِسْعُونَ
100	١٠٠	مِائَةٌ
200	٢٠٠	مِائَتَانِ
1,000	١٠٠٠	أَلْفٌ
2,000	٢٠٠٠	أَلْفَانِ

When these decades are composed of units, the conjunction **وَ** is inserted between the two numbers, the smaller number being put first, as **اِثْنَانِ وَعِشْرُونَ** twenty-two, **اَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ** twenty-one, etc.

The numbers for more than two hundred are as follows :

**ثَلَاثَ مِائَةٍ** three hundred, **اَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ** four hundred, **خَمْسَ مِائَةٍ** five hundred, **سِتَّ مِائَةٍ** six hundred, **سَبْعَ مِائَةٍ** seven hundred, **ثَمَانِ مِائَةٍ** eight hundred, **تِسْعَ مِائَةٍ** nine hundred.

The numbers more than two thousand are thus expressed : **ثَلَاثَةُ اَلْفٍ** 3,000, **اَرْبَعَةُ اَلْفٍ** 4,000, and so on up to ten thousand. Beyond ten thousand they are **مِائَةُ اَلْفٍ** 1,00,000, **ثَلَاثَةُ اَلْفٍ** 2,00,000, **اَلْفُ ثَلَاثِيَةِ اَلْفٍ** 3,00,000, etc. Afterwards **اَلْفُ تِسْعِيَةِ اَلْفٍ** 9,00,000, **اَلْفُ عَشْرَةِ اَلْفٍ** 10,00,000, and so forth.

The numerals indicating numbers made up of thousands, hundreds, tens and units may be expressed in two ways. Either thousands are put first and followed successively by hundreds, units and tens, as **ثَلَاثَةُ اَلْفٍ وَسَبْعُ مِائَةٍ وَاحِدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ** 3,721, or the order is reversed by putting the units first and then hundreds, and thousands, as **اَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ وَسَبْعُ مِائَةٍ وَثَلَاثَةُ اَلْفٍ** 3,721.

#### *Ordinal Numbers.*

Eng.	Masc.	Fem.
1st	أَوَّلٌ	أَوَّلَى
2nd	ثَانِيٌ or ثَانِيَةٌ	ثَانِيَةٌ

Eng.	Masc.	Fem.
3rd	ثَالِثٌ	ثَالِثَةٌ
4th	رَابِعٌ	رَابِعَةٌ
5th	خَامِسٌ	خَامِسَةٌ
6th	سَادِسٌ	سَادِسَةٌ
7th	سَابِعٌ	سَابِعَةٌ
8th	ثَامِنٌ	ثَامِنَةٌ
9th	تَاسِعٌ	تَاسِعَةٌ
10th	عَاشِرٌ	عَاشِرَةٌ
11th	حَادِي عَشْرَ	حَادِيَّةُ عَشْرَةٍ
12th	ثَانِي عَشْرَ	ثَانِيَّةُ عَشْرَةٍ
13th	ثَالِثَ عَشْرَ	ثَالِثَةُ عَشْرَةٍ
14th	رَابِعَ عَشْرَ	رَابِعَةُ عَشْرَةٍ

*Fractional Numbers.*

In the Arabic, *half* is called نِصْفٌ and besides it all other fractional numbers are expressed by words of the forms فُعْلٌ or فُعْلٌ taken from the corresponding radical numbers, as ثُلُثٌ a third, رُبُعٌ one-fourth, خُمُسٌ one-fifth, etc.

*Distributive Numbers.*

These are expressed either by twice repeating the ordinary number, as **وَاحِدٌ وَاحِدٌ** one by one, **ثَلَاثَةٌ ثَلَاثَةٌ** three by three, or by words of the measure **فَعَالٌ** or **مَفْعَلٌ** derived from the radical numbers, as **أَحَادٌ** or **مَوْحَدٌ** one by one, **ثَنَاءٌ** or **مُتَنًى** two by two, **ثَلَاثٌ** or **مُثَلَّثٌ** three by three, **رُبَاعٌ** or **مُرَبَّعٌ** four by four, and so on up to ten. All such measures are *diptote*. The relative adjectives are thus formed out of them, as **ثَنَائِيٌّ** related to, or composed of two, **ثَلَاثِيٌّ** related to or composed of three, and so **رُبَاعِيٌّ**, **خَمْسِيٌّ**, **سُدَاسِيٌّ**, **سَبَاعِيٌّ**, etc.

## PARTICLES الحروف

The Particles in Arabic may be classified under four heads. *viz.*, Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions and Interjections.

*Preposition.*

These Particles are called by Arabic Grammarians **حُرُوفُ الْعَرِّ** *i. e.*, particles that govern nouns in the genitive case. These are 17 in number **حَتَّى** - **عَلَى** - **رُبَّ** - **فِي** - **إِلَى** - **عَنْ** - **مِنْ** - **و** - **كَ** - **ل** - **ت** - **ب** in number **عَدَا** - **خَلَا** - **حَاشَا** - **مُنْذُ** - **مُدَّ**.

Of these the first four are inseparable prepositions, *i. e.*, they being single letters, are, in writing, always united with the following noun.

*Remarks.* 1st. **ب** means *in, at, near, by, with, through*; as **اقمْتُ بِالْمَدِينَةِ** I lived *in* Medina; **هو قائمٌ بالبابِ** he is standing *at* the

door; مَرَرْتُ بِزَيْدٍ I passed *near* or *by* Zaid ; كَتَبْتُ بِالْقَلَمِ I wrote *with* the pen ; بَعْتُ الْفَرَسَ بِسَرْجِهِ I sold the horse *with* its saddle ; سَلَكَ بِهَذِهِ الطَّرِيقِ I walked *through* this road.

*Obs.* The particle بِ sometimes denotes cause, as نَعِيتُ بِطَوْلِ السَّفَرِ I became weary *by* long travel ; and also expresses distinction between two numbers ; as تَوَلَّدَ زَيْدٌ بَعْدَ عَمْرِو بْنِ سَنْتِينَ Zaid was born two years after the birth of 'Amr. This particle is also used in converting a neuter verb into a transitive ; as جَاءَ بِالْكِتَابِ he brought the book ; دَخَبَ اللَّهُ بِنُورِهِ God took his light. It is sometimes used in swearing ; as بِاللَّهِ إِنَّهُ صَادِقٌ By God, he is true. In a negative and interrogative sentence, it is sometimes used as redundant before the predicate ; as مَا زَيْدٌ بِقَائِمٍ Zaid is not standing ; اَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ بِعَاقِمٍ Is not God a Judge ? هَلْ زَيْدٌ بِقَائِمٌ Is Zaid standing ?

2nd. تَ signifies *by* (in swearing) ; as تَا اللَّهُ هُوَ حَيٌّ by God, he is living. This particle is prefixed only to the word اللَّهُ and to no other word.

3rd. لِ signifies *for, to, on account of* ; as الْجَلُّ لِلْفَرَسِ the covering is *for* the horse ; قُتِلَ بِكَفَرِهِ he was slain *on account of* his infidelity.

*Obs.* The preposition لِ is always used with *kasrah*, except when it is joined to an affixed pronoun, in which case it is moved with *fathah* ; as لِّهُ to him, لِّهَا to her, لِّكَ to thee, لِّنَا to us, etc., with the exception of the affixed pronoun of the first person singular ; as لِّى to me. This particle sometimes expresses

swearing in pronouncing a serious case ; as *لله لا يؤخر الأجل* by God, death will make no delay. It denotes possession ( *تمليك* ) ; as *المال لزيد* the property is Zaid's, and also causation, as *بكى للوجع* he wept for pain. Sometimes it is used idiomatically with *fathah* as a kind of interjection expressing cry for help : ( *استغاثة* ) as *يا لزيد* help O Zaid ! *يا لأُمير لزيد* O Amír ! help Zaid. As a conjunction when prefixed before an aorist, it changes the *ḍammah* of its last letter into *fathah* and has the force of *in order that* or *to the end that*, as *قامَ ليدُفُ* he got up in order to go away.

It is often used with *fathah* before the predicate of a sentence especially when the subject is preceded by *إن* as *إن زيدا قائمٌ* verily Zaid is standing. But in this case it does not govern the noun in the genitive case, and is called *لام التأكيد* emphatic *lām*.

4th. *ك* signifies *like, as, resembling*, as *زيدٌ كالأسد* Zaid is like a lion.

This particle being joined with the demonstrative pronoun *ذا* and the relative pronoun *ما*, forms *كذا*, *thus, like that* and *كما* *in the same manner*. Sometimes it is used as redundant, as *ليس كمثلِه شيءٌ* there is nothing like him.

5th. *و* is used in swearing, and prefixed only to substantives and not to pronouns, as *والله لا أشرب الخمر* by God, I will never drink wine.

6th. *من* signifies *from, of, then*. It also implies commencement of a motion or an action, as *سرت من البصرة إلى الكوفة* I walked

from Basrah to Kúfah. Sometimes it is used to relate a thing and then it is called *بيانیه* *explicative*, as مَا اشْتَرَيْتُ مِنَ الثَّوبِ جَيِّدٌ whatever (of cloth) I have bought, is good. It also expresses composition, as الْإِنْسَانُ مُرَكَّبٌ مِنْ جَسَدٍ وَنَفْسٍ man is composed of body and soul. It also comes redundant in a negative sentence, as مَا جَاءَنِي أَحَدٌ nobody came to me, i.e., مَا جَاءَنِي أَحَدٌ

7th. عَنْ signifies *from, away from, after, far*.

This particle also signifies separation from, distance or transition. as رَمَيْتُ السَّهْمَ عَنِ الْقَوْسِ I shot the arrow from the bow ; غَبَتُ عَنْ زَيْدٍ I went away from Zaid.

8th. إِلَى means *to, until*. It indicates termination of an action, as سَرْتُ مِنَ الْبَصْرَةِ إِلَى الْكُوفَةِ I walked from Basrah to Kúfah.

9th. فِي denotes *in*, with reference to time or place ; as جَلَسْتُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ I sat in the mosque. It is sometimes used to express multiplication, as ثَلَاثَةٌ فِي خَمْسَةٍ three multiplied by five.

10th. رَبُّ has the force of *a few, many, much, often*, as رُبُّ رَجُلٍ I met a few men ; رَبُّ مَبَارِزٍ قَاتِلُهُ I fought with many soldiers.

It is sometimes used compounded with مَا, as رُبَّمَا *often, sometimes*.

This particle is not strictly speaking a preposition, according to the idea entertained of it by the English grammarians, but an adjective or an adverb, hence it has not been classed under the head of preposition by Prof. W. Wright and other Anglo-Arabic grammarians.

11th. عَلَى means *on, upon, above, in*, as زَيْدٌ عَلَى السَّطْحِ Zaid is upon the terrace.

It has sometimes the force of *against*, as opposed to *ل* which expresses *favour* or *behalf*, as <sup>أَتَسَبَّتْ</sup> <sup>وَعَلَيْهَا مَا أَكْتَسَبَتْ</sup> <sup>لَهَا مَا كَسَبَتْ</sup> whatever a soul has acquired will be either for or against her. Sometimes it has the force of *according to*, as <sup>عَادَتِهِ</sup> <sup>عَلَى الْمَسْجِدِ</sup> <sup>فَقَعَدَ فِي</sup> he sat in the mosque according to his habit. It is idiomatically employed to express debt or duty, as <sup>أَلْفَ دِينَارٍ</sup> <sup>عَلَى الْفِ</sup> (literally), upon me a thousand dinars, i.e., I owe a thousand dinars; <sup>تُصَلِّيَ</sup> <sup>إِنْ تُصَلِّيَ</sup> <sup>عَلَيْكَ</sup> <sup>إِنْ</sup> thou oughtest to pray. Being prefixed to the second person, pronoun it has the signification of <sup>خُذْ</sup> <sup>خُذْ</sup> seize; as <sup>زَيْدًا</sup> <sup>عَلَيْكَ</sup> <sup>خُذْ</sup> <sup>زَيْدًا</sup> i.e., <sup>خُذْ</sup> <sup>زَيْدًا</sup> seize Zaid.

12th. <sup>صَلَّيْتُ حَتَّى</sup> <sup>مَطْلَعِ الشَّمْسِ</sup> <sup>حَتَّى</sup> means *as far as, until, even*; as <sup>صَلَّيْتُ حَتَّى</sup> <sup>مَطْلَعِ الشَّمْسِ</sup> <sup>حَتَّى</sup> I prayed till the dawn of day; <sup>سَارَ الْقَوْمُ حَتَّى</sup> <sup>طُلُوعِ الشَّمْسِ</sup> <sup>حَتَّى</sup> the people travelled until daybreak; <sup>أَكَلْتُ السَّمَكَةَ حَتَّى</sup> <sup>رَأْسَهَا</sup> <sup>حَتَّى</sup> I have eaten the fish even its head. When this particle precedes the aorist, it governs it in the accusative (نصب); as <sup>لَنْ تَدْخُلَ الْجَنَّةَ</sup> <sup>حَتَّى</sup> <sup>تَسْلِمَ</sup> <sup>حَتَّى</sup> thou shalt not enter the Paradise until thou becomest a Moslem.

13th <sup>مُنْذُ</sup> and 14th. <sup>مُنْذُ</sup> signify *since*; as <sup>مَا رَأَيْتُهُ مَذْيُومِ الْجُمُعَةِ</sup> <sup>مُنْذُ</sup> <sup>يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ</sup> I have not seen him *since* Friday.

15th <sup>حَاشَا</sup>, 16th <sup>خُلَا</sup> and 17th <sup>عَدَا</sup> signify *excepting, or except, with the exception of*, as <sup>جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ حَاشَا زَيْدٍ</sup> The people came excepting Zaid; <sup>رَأَيْتُ الْقَوْمَ عَدَا زَيْدٍ</sup> I saw the people except Zaid, etc. These particles were originally verbs signifying *being beyond* or *being separated from*; hence they sometimes, especially when



preceded by the relative pronoun ما, govern the following noun, in the accusative, as جَاءَ الْقَوْمَ مَا عَدَا زَيْدًا the people came who were beyond Zaid.

There are several particles which are placed by the native grammarians under the head of اَسْمَاءُ الظُّرُوفِ *Nouns denoting time and place*; nevertheless they are reckoned by the Anglo Arabic grammarians as prepositions. They govern the nouns following them in the genitive, not on account of their being حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ but for their being مضاف *muzāf* to them. The principal of these are the following:—أَمَامَ *before*; بَعْدَ *after*; بَيْنَ *between or among*; تَحْتَ *beneath, below, under*; سِوَا or سِوَى *besides or except*; حَوْلَ *round, around*; دُونَ *under beneath, beside*, فَوْقَ *above* قَبْلَ *before*, غَيْرَ *except*, قَدَامَ *before*, مَعَ *with*, وَرَاءَ *beyond, behind* لَدَا *near*, لَدَى *near*, لَدُنْ *near*, لَدَا *near, before, etc.*

These words being preceded by verbs or participles are governed in the accusative, consequently read with *fathah* as زَيْدٌ قَامَ زَيْدٌ أَمَامَ الْأَمِيرِ Zaid stood before the Amīr; زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ فَوْقَ السَّقْفِ Zaid is standing above the terrace. Among the above-mentioned words, the words قَبْلَ, بَعْدَ, and فَوْقَ, when used absolutely, i.e., without their مضاف إليه, *governed nouns*, must be مبنى عَلَى الضَّم *dammmated* without *tanween* and not declinable by the effect of any governing word. as لِلَّهِ الْأَمْرُ قَبْلَ وَمِنْ بَعْدَ the command is for God before everything and after everything, i. e., مِنْ قَبْلِ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ and مِنْ بَعْدِ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ.

*Adverbs.*

Adverbs in Arabic may be divided into two classes: *General*, and *Prescriptive*. The former are nearly all nouns and adjectives in the accusative case. These are in fact the adverbial complements of the sentence, called by our grammarians *الحوال* *المفعول فيه* and *المفعول المطلق*, as *سُرِعاً* quickly, in the sentence *جاء زيد سُرِعاً* Zaid came quickly. I give here a few instances of it from which the student may understand others by analogy<sup>1</sup> *أَبَدًا* for ever, (with a negative particle) *never*; *جَدًّا* very; *جَمِيعًا* together; *خَارِجًا* outside or without; *دَاخِلًا* inside or within; *كَثِيرًا* much; *فَلِيلًا* little; *لَيْلًا* by night; *نَهَارًا* by day; *مَعًا* together; *يَوْمًا* daily (one day); *أَلْيَوْمَ* to-day; *عَدَا* to-morrow; *مَجَانًا* gratis; *وَحْدَةً* alone; *فَضْلًا* freefrom, much more; *سَبِيحًا* or *لَاسَبِيحًا* especially;

The second class of adverbs, are several nouns called by our grammarians *اسماء الظروف* nouns denoting time and place; as *قَبْلَ* or *قَبْلُ* before; *بَعْدَ* after, afterward; *مِنْ بَعْدَ* after here; *بَيْنَ* between; *بَيْنًا* or *بَيْنَمَا* whilst, meanwhile, during this time; *تَحْتَ* below, under, during; *حَيْثُ* where, wheresoever, *حَيْثُ مِنْ* whence; *رَيْثَمَا* hence; *حَيْثَمَا* whensoever; *رَبَّمَا* often, sometimes; *رَيْثَمَا* until; *كَيْفَ* how; *كَيْفَمَا* any how; *مَتَى* when; *مَا* or *مَتَى* whenever; *مَهْمَا* as often as, as long as; *أَيْنَ* where; *أَيْنَمَا* where-soever; *أَيْنَ* where. The following are the conjunctive adverbs usually employed in a past sense, *إِذْ* sometimes signifies on a

<sup>1</sup> For further elucidation of the subject vide Syntax

sudden, lo, as in this sentence **يَيْثُمًا أَنَا قَاعِدٌ إِذْ جَاءَ رَجُلٌ** in the mean time I was sitting, on a sudden a man came, and sometimes it signifies *for and when* ; **إِذْ ذَٰكَ** or **إِذَاكَ** then, at that time ; **إِذْنًا** or **إِذَا** now, at this time ; **إِذَا** when suddenly, on a sudden. To these I may add the demonstrative pronouns. **هُنَا** here, **هَٰنَا**, **هَٰنَاكَ**, **هَٰنَاكَ** and **هَٰنَا** there, or here. Secondly, particles of several denominations. They are as follow:—

1st. Particles called by our grammarians **الْحُرُوفُ الْمَشْبَهُةُ بِالْفِعْلِ** They are placed before sentences governing the subjects in the accusative. They **إِنَّ** or **أَنَّ** verily or verily that **كَأَنَّ** as if **لَكِنَّ** but, **لَعَلَّ** would to God, perhaps, by chance. Examples. **سَمِعْتُ أَنَّ زَيْدًا ذَاهِبٌ** I have heard that Zaid is verily going, **كَأَنَّ زَيْدًا أَسَدٌ** as if Zaid is a lion, **قَامَ زَيْدٌ لَكِنَّ أَمِيرًا جَالِسٌ** Zaid is standing but Amr is sitting, **لَعَلَّ أَمْرًا خَارِجٌ** would to God that youth be returning, **لَعَلَّ أَمْرًا خَارِجٌ** perhaps Amr is coming out.

Obs. They also admit the affixed pronouns: **إِنَّهُ عَالِمٌ** verily he is learned, **إِنَّمَا** (compound of **إِنَّ** and **مَا**) unless, since, it is not but, only. It does not affect the noun which it precedes, and so also **كَأَنَّمَا** .

2nd. The particles governing the aorist in the accusative, (حروف نواصب المضارع) viz., **أَنَّ** that, **لَنْ** never, **كَيْ** so that, in order that, **إِذْنًا** now, **لِ** (called **لَامُ كَيْ** *lām of Kai*) **حَتَّى** even, until. These are placed before the aorist giving it نصب, as **سَمِعْتُ أَنْ يَخْرُجَ**.

I heard that thou wilt go out ; <sup>لَنْ</sup> <sup>يُضْرَبَ</sup> <sup>زَيْدٌ</sup> Zaid will never strike, <sup>إِذَنْ</sup> <sup>تَدْخُلُ</sup> <sup>الْجَنَّةَ</sup> I learnt so that I may be honoured, now thou wilt enter Paradise ( this is said in answer to him who said <sup>أَسْلَمْتُ</sup> I became a Moslem ) <sup>هُ</sup> <sup>سَكَتَ</sup> <sup>لِيَسْمَعَ</sup> <sup>كَلَامِي</sup> he remained silent that he might hear my speech, <sup>أَضْرَبَ</sup> <sup>حَتَّى</sup> <sup>يَمُوتَ</sup> beat him until he dies.

*Obs.* Strictly speaking, the particles <sup>لَنْ</sup> and <sup>كِي</sup> may more properly be classed under the head of conjunction than the adverbs ; but I have placed them under the same category as they are placed by our native grammarians.

*3rd.* The particles which, when placed before the aorist, give it *juzm* and curtail all *nuns* called <sup>نُونُ الْأَعْرَابِ</sup>. These are:—<sup>لَمْ</sup> <sup>لَمْ</sup> not no, <sup>لَمْ</sup> not yet. These two particles when placed before the aorist, convert it into the sense of negative preterite, but the negative implied by <sup>لَمْ</sup> comprehends all future times. This <sup>لَمْ</sup> sometimes denotes *when*, *after* or *after that*, and then it may be used before a preterite too, as <sup>لَمَّا</sup> <sup>رَأَى</sup> <sup>زَيْدٌ</sup> <sup>بَكَى</sup> when Zaid saw me he wept.

*4th.* The particles called those of affirmation ( <sup>حُرُوفُ الْإِيجَابِ</sup> ) They are:—<sup>نَعَمْ</sup> <sup>نَعَمْ</sup> yes, very well, even so. It is used in confirming what another person had, whether the statement be in the affirmative or negative ; as <sup>أَجَاءَ</sup> <sup>زَيْدٌ</sup> has Zaid come ? <sup>نَعَمْ</sup> Yes. <sup>بَلَى</sup> yes it is, nay, it is so. This particle is used after the interrogative and negative propositions. as <sup>أَمَّا</sup> <sup>كَفَّكَ</sup> <sup>هَذَا</sup> <sup>الْدِرْهَمُ</sup> is not this *dirham* sufficient for thee ? <sup>بَلَى</sup> yes, it is ; <sup>أَيْ</sup> yes,

verily. It is followed by an oath, as **أَيْ وَاللَّهِ إِنَّهُ الْحَقُّ** by God, it is true **جَبَر** Yes.

5th. The particles called by our grammarians **حُرُوفُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ** particles of interrogation. These are **أ** *whether*, **هَلْ** *whether*, as **أَجَاءَكَ زَيْدٌ** has Zaid come to thee? **هَلْ عِنْدَكَ دِرْهَمٌ** whether there is a *dirham* with thee?"

6th. The particles called **حُرُوفُ التَّحْضِيزِ وَالتَّوْبِيخِ** particles of inducement and censure. They are **أَلَا** *whether not, why not*, **لَوْ** *if not*. When these particles are prefixed to the preterite, they denote censure as the person addressed has left out something desirable, as **هَلَّا أَكْرَمْتَ زَيْدًا وَقَدْ كَانَ ضَيْفُكَ** why didst thou not honour Zaid, while he was your guest; and when prefixed to the aorist they imply inducement; as **هَلَّا تَقْرَأُ لِتَكُونَ عَلِيمًا** why dost thou not read that thou mayst become a learned man?

7th. The particle called by our grammarians **حرف التوقع**. It is **قَدْ** which being prefixed by **فَ** conjunction or **لَ** of emphasis becomes **فَقَدْ** and **لَقَدْ**, When this is prefixed to the preterite, it implies that something uncertain has recently taken place, that something expected has been realized, that something has happened in agreement with, or in opposition to certain symptoms or circumstances; as you should say to a man who expects the coming of Zaid **قَدْ جَاءَ زَيْدٌ** verily, Zaid has come. When this particle is prefixed to the aorist, it means *sometimes, often, perhaps*, as **أَلْجَوَادُ قَدْ يَفْتَرُّ** a talented man sometimes becomes dull.

8th. The particles called **حُرُوفُ التَّكْيِيدِ** emphatical particles.

They are **ل** called **لام التأكيد** *lām* of corroboration, and the two *nūns* called **النون الثقيلة** *heavy nūn* and **النون الخفيفة** *light nūn*; the former of these are prefixed to the noun as well as to the verb, as **ان زيدا قائما** verily, Zaid is standing and **لو جاء زيد لهلك** if Zaid would come, verily he would be destroyed. It is often used to the predicate of a sentence to which **ان** and **لو** are prefixed, as it has been known by the above examples. The *nūns* are only suffixed to the verbs; as **ليقومن زيد** Verily Zaid will stand.

9th. The particles called **حروف التفسير**, particles of interpretation. They are **أي**, namely **ان**, that is.

10th. The particle denominated **حرف الردع**, particle of emphatical negation. It is **كلا**, not at all, by no means, never so, as **هل ضربت زيدا كلا** Hast thou'beated Zaid? Never.

Besides the abovementionad classes of particles, there are several other words which may be reckoned among adverbs; they are **فقط** only, merely; **فحسب** only, merely; **لا غير** only, nothing else,

### Conjunctions.

In Arabic, conjunctions may be divided into three classes :  
1st *Copulative* ; 2nd *Disjunctive* and 3rd *Conditional*.

#### 1st Copulative Conjunctions.

They are **و** and **ف** and then, **ثم** and then, and **حتى** even.<sup>1</sup>

Obs. The first of these is used merely for connecting either

---

<sup>1</sup> This **حتى** should not be confounded with the foregoing **حتى** a preposition. According to the English sense, this **حتى** may properly be called an adverb.

two single word, without any regard to order, or two sentences as  
 جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَآمَرٌ Zaid and Amr came ; جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَذَهَبَ بَكْرٌ Zaid came  
 and Bakr went. The particle **ف** comes for connection with the  
 order of time, as جَاءَ رَشِيدٌ فَمَا مُمُنٌ Rashid came, then Mamún,  
 meaning that Rashid came first and then Mamún. The  
 particle **ثُمَّ** is used for connection with order and delay, as  
 جَاءَ رَشِيدٌ ثُمَّ مَا مُمُنٌ Rashid came and then Mamún, meaning  
 that Rashid came first and then, after an interval, Mamún  
 came. **حَتَّى** is used for denoting شِدَّةٌ intensity of, سَعْفٌ weakness,  
 and it is necessary that the object implied by the noun  
 coming after it, be included in the noun preceding it, as  
 جَاءَ الْقَوْمَ حَتَّى رَأَيْسِهِمُ the people came, even their chief,  
 شَتَمَنِي النَّاسَ حَتَّى الْحَبَّامُونَ the people abused me, even the barbers.

### 2nd Disjunctive Conjunctions.

They are **أَوْ** or, **أَمَّا** either, **أَمْ** or, **لَا** not, **لَكِنْ** but, **بَلْ** rather,  
 as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ أَوْ بَكْرٌ Zaid came or Bakr ; **إِمَّا شَجَرٌ أَوْ حَجَرٌ** this is either  
 a tree or stone, **أَزِيدُ عِنْدَكَ أَمْ عَمْرُو** whether Zaid is near thee or Amr,  
**قَامَ بَكْرٌ لَكِنْ خَالِدٌ لَمْ يَقُمْ** Zaid arrived or rather Bakr ; **بَكْرٌ قَامَ بَلْ خَالِدٌ لَمْ يَقُمْ**  
 Bakr stood but Khalid did not, **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ لَا عَمْرُو** Zaid came, not Amr.

*Obs.* Sometimes **أَوْ** means *unless* or *until* and then it is  
 considered equivalent to **إِلَى أَنْ** and gives *nasb* نصب to the  
 aorist to which it is prefixed, as **لَا ضَرْبَتَكَ أَوْ تَذُوبٌ** Verily I will  
 beat thee unless thou wilt repent ; **أَمَّا** is necessarily followed  
 either by another **إِمَّا** or by **أَوْ**. The particle **إَمْ** is used in

interrogation for ascertaining either of the two matters of which one is certain to have taken place. It is always preceded by the interrogative *hamzah* ا Sometimes it is used in the sense of بَلْ . The particle لَكِنْ requires a negative particle before or after it.

### 3rd Conditional Conjunctions.

They are اِنْ if, اَوْ if, اَمَّا but, then, however, as regards.

Obs.—The particle اِنْ always refers to futurity, although it may be prefixed to the preterite ماضِي, as اِنْ اَقْبَيْتَنِي اَكْرَمْتُكَ If thou wilt see me, I shall honour thee. The particle اَوْ, on the contrary, has always reference to the past time, as لَوْ نَزَرْتَنِي لَاكْرَمْتُكَ hadst thou seen me I would have honoured thee. Again اِنْ is applicable to a doubtful event, hence it is incorrect to say اِنْ طَلَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ اَنْتَيْتُكَ I shall come to thee if the sun rises. Sometimes the letter و is prefixed to it, and then it is called اِنْ الْمَتَّصِلَةُ and has the force of *although*, as اِنْ كَانَ زَاهِدًا اَلْبَخِيلُ جَهَنَّمِيَّ and the miser is a hellish being although he may be a devotee. The particle لَوْ signifies the negation of the second sentence, as consequence to that of the first ; as لَوْ قَاتَلَ زَيْدٌ لَقُتِلَ had Zaid made war, verily he would have been killed, meaning that Zaid did not make the war and consequently was not killed. It is often used, compounded with لَا i. e. لَوْلَا if not, as لَوْلَا عَلِيٌّ لَهْلَكَ عُمَرُو had there not been Ali, verily Omar would have perished.<sup>1</sup> The

<sup>1</sup> لَوْ and لَوْلَا have always التَّكْيِيدُ لام emphatical *lām* prefixed to the second number of the preposition which they precede.



*Obs.* There are several other particles which, though not reckoned by our grammarians under the head of conjunctions, yet may be held as such according to the sense entertained by English grammarians. These particles are generally those which I have mentioned under the heads above stated. They are:—لَعَلَّ (orig. لَ لَ اَنَّ) that it may not, اَنَّ, اَنَّ that, كَيَّ or كَيَّ in order that, لَكِن but, (compound of ل and اَنَّ), because.

Under this head may come three classes of words:—two of which are particles and the third, though in fact particles, is called by Arabic grammarians **أَسْمَاءُ الْأَصْوَاتِ** nouns of sounds.

The third are all sorts of sounds uttered by men at the time of any mental emotion whether caused by joy or grief, or in

admiration of any person or thing: they are, *as* أَهْ - أَهْ *ah* ! أَهْ  
*Oh!* أَوَّاهْ - أَوَّاهْ - أَوَّاهْ *alas!* وَأَمْهَا *bravo!* بِمَنْحِ *Bravo!* وَيْ *woe!* وَاهْ *oh!*  
 وَيْ *woe!* وَيْلٌ *woe!* وَيْلُكَ, وَيْلُكَ *woe be to thee!* سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ *Good*  
*God!* لِلَّهِ دُرَّةٌ *excellent!* etc.

## APPENDIX

### RULES OF PERMUTATION

#### No. 1.

The letter و occurring as the primal radical of an aorist formed on the measure  $\text{يُفَعِّلُ}$  must be rejected, as  $\text{يَعُدُّ}$  for  $\text{يُؤَعِّدُ}$ ,  $\text{يَلِدُ}$  for  $\text{يُولِّدُ}$  so, from the imperative; as  $\text{عُدْ}$  for  $\text{أَوْعِدْ}$ . And it may also be dropped from the infinitive, leaving  $\text{عِدَّة}$  at the end as a compensation for the lost radical; as  $\text{عِدَّة}$  for  $\text{وَعْدٌ}$ , and  $\text{وَصْفٌ}$  for  $\text{وَصْفَةٌ}$ .

#### No. 2.

Either of the letters و and ی occurring as the primal radical of a verb of the form  $\text{إِفْتَعَال}$  must be changed into ت, after which the two homogeneous letters will coalesce together under a *tashdid*; as  $\text{تَعَدَّد}$  for  $\text{أَوْعَدَد}$ ,  $\text{تَنَسَّر}$  for  $\text{إِنْسَر}$ .

#### No. 3.

Every quiescent و or occurring after *kasrah* must be changed into ي as  $\text{مِيزَانٌ}$  for  $\text{مُوزَانٌ}$ , and  $\text{مَعَارِبُ}$  (pl. of  $\text{مَحْرَابٌ}$ ) for  $\text{مُحَارِبُ}$ ; and every quiescent ی or ا coming after *dammah* must be changed into و as  $\text{يُسْرُ}$  for  $\text{يُوسِرُ}$ ,  $\text{ضَارِبُ}$  for  $\text{صُورِبُ}$ .

#### No. 4.

The letters و and ی movable by any vowel-point must be changed into *alif* wherever they follow the vowel *fathah*, as  $\text{قَالَ}$  for  $\text{قُولُ}$  and  $\text{بَاعَ}$  for  $\text{بَيَّعَ}$ .

(a). If the operation of this rule gives birth to the junction of two quiescent letters, the *alif* will then be rejected, as دَعَوْتُ first becomes دَعَاتُ and subsequently دَعْتُ. It will be rejected even though the other quiescent letter may receive an accidental vowel-point as for the dual termination in دَعَا and رَمَا.

(b). It does not operate on any word in which the letters و or ي are followed by the terminations of the dual number, as دَعَا , رَمَا

#### No. 5.

When in the active preterite of the primitive trilateral of the *concave* verbs, the medial radical و or ي is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents (which is always inadmissible) the first radical is moved with *ḍammah*, as قُلْتُ for قَوْلْتُ afterwards قَالْتُ except when the *concave* verb has for its medial radical ي or the preterite is in the form فَعِلَ in which cases a *kasrah* is given to the first radical instead of *ḍammah*, as بَعِيَ for بَيْعُنْ; خَرَفُنْ for خَفُنْ.

#### No. 6.

A medial و or ي in the preterite passive (whether of the primitive or derivative form) having suffered permutations in the active voice will transfer *kasrah* to the first radical and it will be changed into ي, as قِيلَ for قَوْلُ , بِيَعُ for بَيْعُ , اُخْتَبِرَ for اُخْتَبِرَ , اُنْقِدَ for اِنْقَادُ .

## No. 7.

When the medial radical و or ی in the preterite passive is dropped to avoid the junction of two quiescents, a *ḍammah* is given to the preceding letter except when the medial radical is ی or و moved with *kasrah*, in which case a *kasrah* is given to the preceding letter, as قُلْنَ for قُولْنَ, بُعِنَ for بُيَعْنَ, خُفْنَ for خُفْنَ, خُوفْنَ for خُوفْنَ.

## No. 8.

The movable letters و or ی occurring after a quiescent letter, will transfer their vowel-points to that letter, as يَقُولُ for يَقُولُ. After this the letters will be changed into those which are homogeneous to the preceding vowel-point, as أَقَامَ for أَقَامَ. And these letters will be dropped if the following letter be quiescent, as أَقَامَ for أَقَامَ etc.

In words formed on the measure مَفْعُولٌ the vowel *ḍammah* must be changed into *kasrah* if ی be the medial radical, as مَبْيُوعٌ for مَبْيُوعٌ.

## No. 9.

Words formed on the measure of فاعِل change the medial radical و or ی into the *hamzah*, if the و or ی suffer permutations in the tenses of the verb, as قَائِلٌ for قَائِلٌ, بَائِعٌ for بَائِعٌ.

When a و or ی occurs at the end of a word and after a servile *alif*, then that و or ی is changed into *hamzah*, as كَسَاءٌ for كَسَاءٌ.

## No. 10.

The letter **و** following *kasrah* at the end of a ward will be changed into **ى**, as **دُعِى** for **دُعُو** **رَضِى** for **رَضُو** and also though the **و** be followed by some accidental termination such as those of the feminine gender or plural number, as **دَاعِيَةٍ** for **دَاعُوَةٍ** . **دَاعِيَاتٍ** for **دَاعُوَاتٍ** .

## No. 11.

A radical **و** of the trilateral root occurring after three or four letters at the end of a word will be changed into **ى**, provided it shall not follow the vowel *ḍammah* or the quiescent **و**, as **يُدْعِى** for **يُدْعُو**, **أَعْلِى** for **أَعْلُو**, **أَسْتَعْلِيتُ** for **أَسْتَعْلُوتُ**; and not **يُدْعُو** for **يُدْعُو** .

## No. 12.

The letter **ى** occurring at the end of a verb after *ḍammah* expressed or understood must be changed into **و**, as **نُبُو** for **نُبِى** .

## No. 13.

A quiescent infirm letter occurring at the end of an imperative or of an aorist following **لَمْ**, or any other *jazm* giving participles, must be rejected, as **لَمْ يَدْعُو** for **لَمْ يَدْعُ**, **لَمْ يَدْعُو** for **لَمْ يَدْعُ** .

## No. 14.

When an infirm letter is moved with *ḍammah* and preceded by *kasrah*, or moved with *kasrah* and preceded by *ḍammah*, then its *ḍammah* or *kasrah* will be transferred to the preceding

letter which shall then lose its own vowel-point, as رَضُوا for رَضُواْ  
نَدْعُونِ for نَدْعُونِ.

In every other case the vowel-point must be rejected, not transferred, as تَرْمِيْنُ for تَرْمِيْنُ etc.

## No. 15.

Every infirm letter occurring at the end of a (اسم متكمّن) noun admitting case-marks, will change the preceding *dammah* into *kasrah*, and if that infirm letter be و, it will be changed into ی, as نَعْلُوْا for نَعْلِيْ for نَعْلِ.

## No. 16.

A movable و following the vowel *kasrah* as the medial of an infinitive, will be changed into ی if it were permuted in the tenses of the verb, but not otherwise; as قِيَامٌ, for قِيَامٌ, inf. of قَامَ.

## No. 17.

If the letters و and ی, or ی and و occur together in the same word, the first being quiescent, the و is changed into ی and the homogeneous letters coalesce together under the sign *tashdid*; as مَرْمِيْ for مَرْمِيْ, سَبَدٌ for سَبَدٌ.

## No. 18.

A single quiescent *hamzah* may be optionally but not necessarily changed into that letter which is homogeneous with the vowel-point of the preceding letter, as رَأْسٌ for رَأْسٌ, بَؤْسٌ for بَؤْسٌ, ذَيْبٌ for ذَيْبٌ.





same word be inherently, not accidentally movable, they must coalesce together, as <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ for <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ.

## No. 24.

If the second of two homogeneous letter be not necessarily quiescent, the coalescence between them shall be optional, as <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ for <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ, because the second quiescent letter of <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ becomes sometimes movable when it joins with another word, as in <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ الْقَوْمِ. In <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ and <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ the coalescence is inadmissible, because the second *dāl* is necessarily quiescent. After coalescence, the second of the two homogeneous letter may receive *kasrah* (as <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ) or *fathah* (as <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ), but receives *dammah* only when the preceding letter has *dammah* as <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ orig. <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ not <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ for it was originally <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ.

## No. 25.

When the homogeneous strong letter occur together in the same word having a quiescent letter before them, then the vowel-point of the first of these two must be thrown back to the preceding quiescent letter and then will coalesce together, as <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ for <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ provided those two homogeneous letter must not be preceded by a quiescent servile *infirm* letter, in which case the vowel point of the first of the two homogeneous letter will be rejected and the two letter will coalesce together, as <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ for <sup>مَدَّ</sup>مَدَّ.

## PART III

### SYNTAX

In Arabic, the essential parts of a sentence are the subject (المُسند اليه) and the predicate (المُسند). The relation between them is known as *الاسناد the relation of attribute*. The complements are not reckoned as necessary parts of a sentence. There are four kinds of sentence in Arabic :—1st, *جُمْلَةٌ فَعْلِيَّةٌ* The verbal sentence. 2nd, *جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ*. The nominal sentence. 3rd, *جُمْلَةٌ ظَرْفِيَّةٌ* The local sentence. 4th, *جُمْلَةٌ شَرْطِيَّةٌ* The conditional sentence.

#### *جُمْلَةٌ فَعْلِيَّةٌ Verbal Sentence*

A verbal sentence is that which is composed of a finite verb and its agent, nominative. An agent of a verb may be either a noun, as *قَامَ زَيْدٌ* Zaid stood; or an implied pronoun in a verb, as *قَامَ* he stood, in which the pronoun *هو* is implied. It should be borne in mind that in a verbal sentence, the verb must always precede its agent. If in any case, the verb comes after the agent, the sentence is regarded by our Arabic grammarians as a nominal sentence, which shall be treated of hereafter. The noun is here called *مُبْتَدَأٌ inchoative* and not *فَاعِلٌ agent* while the pronoun, implied in the verb, is held to be its nomi-

native or agent, as for instance in the sentence **زَيْدٌ قَامَ** Zaid stood, the agent of the verb **قَامَ** is the pronoun **هو** implied in it, which refers to **زيد**; but the word **زيد** is *inchoative* or the subject of a nominal sentence. In a verbal sentence, the verb preceding the agent is always in the singular number, whether the agent be singular, dual, or plural, as **قَامَ مُسْلِمٌ** Moslem stood; **قَامَ مُسْلِمَانِ** two Moslems stood, and **قَامَ مُسْلِمُونَ** Moslems stood. But when the verb comes after the agent (in which case the pronoun implied in the verb is its nominative), the verb must agree with the agent in number, as **الْمُسْلِمُ قَامَ** the Moslem stood, **الْمُسْلِمَانِ قَامَا** the two Moslems stood, **الْمُسْلِمُونَ قَامُوا**, all the Moslems stood.

When the agent is a *real feminine* (المؤنث الحقيقي), the verb must always be in the feminine gender, as **قَامَتْ جَارِيَةٌ** a girl stood; expect when any other word or words intervene between the verb and its nominative, in which case the verb may be of either gender, as **قَامَتْ الْيَوْمَ جَارِيَةٌ** or **قَامَ الْيَوْمَ جَارِيَةٌ** a girl stood this day.<sup>1</sup>

When the agent is *المؤنث الغير الحقيقي assumed feminine* or *الجمع المكسر broken plural* which is held as feminine, then if the verb precedes the agent, the verb may be of either gender, as **طَلَعَتْ** or **قَامَ الرِّجَالُ** the men stood. But when the verb comes after the agent, it must invariably be in the feminine gender, as **الْشَّمْسُ طَلَعَتْ** and **الرِّجَالُ قَامَتْ**; but in the latter instance, the verb may also be

<sup>1</sup> For the real feminine, vide p. 180

used in the plural form of the masculine gender, as **الرِّجَالُ قَامُوا**. The nominative of a passive verb is termed by Arabic grammarians **مفعول مالم يُسم فاعله** the object whose agent is not mentioned. It is in every respect like the nominative of an active verb.

### Nominal Sentence.

A *nominal sentence* is that which is composed of a subject which may be either a substantive or a pronoun, and a predicate which may be a noun (substantive or attributive), a finite verb or a preposition along with the word governed by it ( **جار مع مجرورة** ) or even sometimes a sentence. What characterizes a nominal sentence is the absence of a copula corresponding to the word *is* in English, **است** in Persian and **εστι** in Greek, as **زيدٌ أسدٌ** Zaid (is) a lion **زيدٌ عالمٌ** Zaid (is) learned ; **زيدٌ في الدار** Zaid (is) in the house ; **زيدٌ قام** Zaid stood (lit.) he stood ; **زيدٌ أبوه قائمٌ** Zaid's father (lit. Zaid, his father) is standing. The subject of a nominal sentence is termed **المبتدا** the *inchoative* and its predicate **الخبر** the *enuntiative* or *announcement*.

When a sentence (whether verbal or nominal) be a predicate of a nominal sentence, there must be a pronoun whether *implied* or *expressed* in the sentence, referring to the subject, as **زيدٌ قام أبوه** (lit.) Zaid, *his* father stood, as **زيدٌ أخوه صالحٌ** Zaid's brother is a good man, (lit.) Zaid *his* brother is a good man, **زيد قام** Zaid stood ; (lit.) Zaid *he* stood, the pronoun **هو** being implied in **قام**

The subject in a *nominal* sentence must be either a defined noun (المعرفة) or an undefined noun restricted<sup>1</sup> by qualifications, (النكرة المخصوصة) as زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ Zaid is standing ; الرَّجُلُ كَاتِبٌ the man is writing ; هُوَ كَاتِبٌ he is a writer ; هَذَا كَاتِبٌ this is a writer ; رَجُلٌ أَسْوَدُ قَائِمٌ a black man is standing. But a predicate may be either a defined noun or an undefined noun. But when it is a defined noun, a pronoun called ضمير الفصل *pronoun of separation* often intervenes between the subject and the predicate, as اللهُ هُوَ الْحَقُّ God is the truth. The subject of a *nominal* sentence always precedes its predicate except when the latter is a noun denoting place or time, or جارِ مَجْرُورَةٍ a preposition and its governed noun, in which case the predicate optionally may precede the subject, as زَيْدٌ فِي الدَّارِ Zaid is in the house ; لَهُ مَالٌ he has property, *lit.* for him is property. But when the subject being an undefined noun, is restricted by the predicate, the latter must come before the former, as فِي الدَّارِ رَجُلٌ a man is in the house.

*Obs.* A verbal sentence preceded by the particles ما and ان (called الحروف المصدرية the particles which convert the 'sense of a finite verb to that of an infinitive) may be the subject of a nominal and verbal sentence, as أَنْ تُصَوِّمُوا خَيْرٌ لَكُمْ It is good for you that you should fast, *lit.* to fast is good for you (here أَنْ تُصَوِّمُوا

<sup>1</sup> An undefined noun is restricted either by being qualified by an adjective, as رَجُلٌ فاضِلٌ came ; or by bringing the predicate, signifying locality, before the subject, as فِي الدَّارِ رَجُلٌ a man is in the house.

= أَعْجَبَنِي أَنْ خَرَجْتَ (صَوْمَكُمْ) It pleased me that you went out ; (*lit.*) your going out pleased me (here خَرَجْتَ = خَرُوجُكَ = أَنْ خَرَجْتَ) وَدُّوا مَا عِنْدَكُمْ (here عِنْدَكُمْ = مَا عِنْدَكُمْ). A nominal sentence preceded by أَنْ (المفتوحة) is sometimes made the subject of a verbal or a nominal sentence ; as بَلَغَنِي أَنَّ زَيْدًا مُنْطَلِقٌ it reached me, i.e., I heard that Zaid is walking, عِنْدِي أَنَّكَ عَالِمٌ to me, i.e., in my opinion, thou art a learned man.

### Local Sentence.

A *local sentence* is that whose predicate is a preposition with a genitive indicating place or time, as فِي الدَّارِ زَيْدٌ Zaid is in the house. However the expression ظَرْف is often used in the general sense of جار مع مجرورة . Hence any sentence commencing with a preposition and its genitive, as the predicate, may be called جملة ظرفية a *local sentence*. The sentence لَهُ مَالٌ he has property, or *lit.* property is for him, is also a *local sentence*.

According to some, a *local sentence* is in fact a *nominal sentence*, whose predicate has been placed before the subject. Again others say that it is in fact a *verbal sentence* with the verb اسْتَقَرَّ or ثَبَّتَ, حَصَلَ etc., understood ; so that, according to them, عَلَيْهِ دِينَ in the sentence يَسْتَقِرُّ عَلَيْهِ دِينَ is equivalent to يَسْتَقِرُّ or ثَبَّتَ عَلَيْهِ دِينَ and دِينَ is the فاعل agent, of the understood verb.

### Conditional Sentence.

A *conditional sentence* is composed of two verbal sentences or of a *verbal* and a *nominal sentence*, the first of which is called

*protasis* and is preceded generally by a conditional particle ; and the other is called *جزاء* *apodosis*.

*Remarks.* When both the *protasis* شرط and *apodosis* جزاء are aoristis, *jazm* will be given to the last letters of both, but when the former alone is aorist, then only its last letter will be *jazmated*, as <sup>ا</sup>اَنْ <sup>ا</sup>تَضَرَّبَ <sup>ا</sup>اِنْ <sup>ا</sup>تَضَرَّبَ <sup>ا</sup>اَضْرَبْتُ if thou wilt strike, I will strike ; <sup>ا</sup>اِنْ <sup>ا</sup>تَضَرَّبَ <sup>ا</sup>بْنِي <sup>ا</sup>ضَرَبْتُكَ if thou wilt beat me, I will beat thee. When the latter, i. e., the *apodosis* only, is as aorist, then a *jazm* may optionally be given to it ; as <sup>ا</sup>اِنْ <sup>ا</sup>ضَرَبْتُكَ <sup>ا</sup>تَضَرَّبَ <sup>ا</sup>بْنِي or <sup>ا</sup>نَضَرَّبَ <sup>ا</sup>بْنِي

When the *apodosis* is a preterite ماضي without the particle قد prefixed to it, or an aorist with the particle لم, then it will always be without the particle ف called *الجزاء* فاء الجزاء, as <sup>ا</sup>اِنْ <sup>ا</sup>خَرَجْتَ <sup>ا</sup>خَرَجْتُ if thou wilt come out, I will come out ; <sup>ا</sup>اِنْ <sup>ا</sup>خَرَجْتَ <sup>ا</sup>لَمْ <sup>ا</sup>اُخْرَجْ if thou wilt come out, I will not come out. If the *apodosis* be an affirmative aorist مضارع متبب or a negative one with the particle لا, the use of ف and its omission before the *apodosis* are both admissible, as, <sup>ا</sup>اِنْ <sup>ا</sup>تَضَرَّبْتَ <sup>ا</sup>فَلَا <sup>ا</sup>اُكْرِمُكَ or <sup>ا</sup>اِنْ <sup>ا</sup>اُكْرِمُكَ لا if thou wilt strike. I will not honour thee. Excepting the cases above enumerated, the ف must be used before the *apodosis*, as <sup>ا</sup>اِنْ <sup>ا</sup>شَرِبَ <sup>ا</sup>الْخَمْرَ <sup>ا</sup>فَيُؤَسِّقُ if he drinks wine. he is sinful.

#### GOVERNING POWERS.

The governing powers by whose effects the case-mark اعراب are given to declinable nouns, have been counted by Shaikh Abdul Qahir of Jurjan to be one hundred in number. These are of two sorts: 1st, قياسي analogous ; and 2ndly, سماعي

*prescriptive*. By an *analogous* power is meant that which is subject to a general rule, applicable to all words of that kind; and by a *prescriptive* one, we mean those few words reputed by the Arabs to have such a governing power and which cannot be applicable to others by analogy.

#### *Analogous Governing Powers.*

The analogous governing powers are again sub-divided into two classes: 1st, (المعنوي) *absolute*, and 2nd, لفظي *verbal*.

#### *Absolute Governing Powers.*

By *absolute* or *independent government* is meant a government perceived by the mind, in which a word, as an agent, has no concern. They are only two in number: 1st, the power which governs the مبتدأ *subject* and the خبر *predicate* of a nominal sentence in the رفع *nominative case*, that is, either being in an absolute state without any governing word, زَيْدٌ مُنْطَلِقٌ Zaid is going; 2ndly, the power which gives رفع *raf'*, *nominative case-mark* to the aorist, that is, when there is no particle to give it jazm or nashb, as for instance, اَمْ or لَنْ as يَقُومُ he stands.

#### *Verbal Governing Powers.*

The *analogous verbal* governing powers are seven in number, they are as follows:—

#### *Finite Verbs in General.*

The verb governs its agent in the *nominative case*, and, if it be a *transitive verb*, it governs an *objective* in the *accusative*, as



زَيْدٌ قَامَ Zaid stood ; زَيْدٌ ضَرَبَ عَمْرًا Zaid beat Amr. But, as I have already stated, according to Arab grammarians, only a verb and its agent are necessary for the completion of a verbal sentence ; nevertheless, there are several *complements* متعلقات which are also often used with verbs, and are governed by them in the حالات مفعولى accusative case. They may be divided into two classes ; 1st, objective complements ; 2nd, adverbial complements.

### *Objective Complements.*

These are five in number : 1st, المفعول المطلق the *absolute* objective ; 2nd, المفعول به the objective *proper* ; 3rd, المفعول فيه the *local* or *temporal* objective ; 4th, المفعول له the *causative* objective ; and 5th, المفعول معه the *associative* objective.

### *Absolute Objective المفعول المطلق*

All verbs, whether transitive, active or passive, sometimes govern their infinitives in the accusative. These are called by our grammarians المفعول المطلق. They are used—1st, for giving excess intensity to the signification of the verb ; as زَيْدٌ ضَرَبَ Zaid struck a striking, *i. e.*, violently ; 2ndly, for indicating the kind or quality of an action ; this is generally when the infinitives are connected with adjectives, or are مضاف muzaf to some other word, as ضَرَبْتُ ضَرْباً شَدِيداً I beat severe beating ; جَلَسَ حِلَّةُ الْقَارِي he sat as a reader sits ; 3rdly, for indicating the number of times an action takes place ; as ضَرَبَ ضَرْبَةً He struck one stroke ; ضَرَبَ ضَرْبَيْنِ he struck two strokes ; ضَرَبَ ضَرْباً كَثِيراً he struck many strokes.

Sometimes a *maf'ul mutalaq* is formed of an infinitive different in root or different in form from that of the governing verb, but of the same meaning, as قَعَدْتُ جُلُوسًا I sat a sitting; اِكْتَسَبَ الْعِلْمَ كُسْبًا he acquired the knowledge (acquiring.)

### المفعول به Objective Proper

The *maf'ul bihi* is called by our grammarians the object suffering an action, or what is termed by English grammarians an *objective*, as ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا I struck Zaid. The verb of an objective is sometimes understood, specially when used in تحذير warning another to avoid the object, as اتَّقِ الطَّرِيقَ i. e. الطريقُ avoid the road ; اَلْمَوْتُ الْمَوْتُ be careful of death.

### المفعول فيه Locative or Temporal Object

By this designation is known the time or place in which an action takes place ; this is also called ظرف *vessel*. The noun indicating time (whether limited or unlimited) may be always governed in accusative by omitting the particle في *on* or *in*, as صُمْتُ دَهْرًا I fasted a (long) time ; سَافَرْتُ شَهْرًا I travelled one month; صَلَّيْتُ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ I prayed on Friday; جَاءَ الْيَوْمَ زَيْدٌ Zaid came to-day; اَنَا اَزُوجُ غَدًا I will go to-morrow. And also the noun indicating place may be thus governed, provided it denotes a place unlimited or undefined, as جُلَسْتُ خَلْفَكَ I sat behind thee; نَظَرْتُ يَمِينًا وَشِمَالًا I looked to the right and left ; سَارَ قَوْقُ الْجَبَلِ he walked upon the mountain; نَامَ تَحْتَ الشَّجَرَةِ he slept under the tree; قُمْتُ اَمَامَكَ I stood before thee. But when the place of the

action is definitely specified, it cannot be governed in the accusative by omitting the preposition *في* but it is governed in the genitive by the preposition *في*; as *جَلَسْتُ فِي الدَّارِ* I sat in the house; *قُمْتُ فِي السُّوقِ* I stood in the market; *جَلَسْتُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ* I sat in the mosque.

The word *مكان* or *موضع* or any other noun conveying a general meaning of place is used as accusative without *في*; as *جَلَسْتُ مَكَانَ زَيْدٍ* I sat in the place of Zaid. And also such is the case with *اسم الظرف* the noun denoting time or place derived from the governing verb; as *قَعَدْتُ مَقْعَدَ زَيْدٍ* I sat in the seat of Zaid.

*Obs.* The nouns *داخل - جوف* inside, *خارج* outside, *جانب - جهة* side, *قرب* near, *وسط* middle, are also used as accusatives without the preposition; as *نِمْتُ خَارِجَ الْبَيْتِ* I slept outside the house; *قَامَ دَاخِلَ الدَّارِ* he walked to the west side; *سَارَ جَانِبَ الْغَرْبِ* he stood inside the house; *سَرْتُ قُرْبَ مَكَانِهِ* I walked near his house; *قَعَدَ وَسَطَ الدَّارِ* he sat in the middle of the house.

#### المفعول له Causative Object

This accusative is that which expresses the cause or motive or object of the action; as *ضَرَبْتُ ابْنِي نَادِيًا* I beat my son for correction's sake; *قُمْتُ اِكْرَامًا لَهُ* I stood up in order to honour him, *i. e. لِلاِكْرَامِ وَلِلنَّادِيَةِ*. It is necessary that it should be an infinitive and an act of the agent of the governing verb, otherwise the preposition *لِ* must be prefixed to it, as *ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى الدَّكَانِ لِلشَّمْنِ* I went to the shop for butter; *تَرَكْتُ الْوَطْنَ لِظُلْمِ الْأَمِيرِ* I left my

country for the tyranny of the governor. In the first of these two examples the noun not being an infinitive, and in the second, though it is an infinitive, yet not the act of the agent of the verb, and so the proposition *ل* is used.

### *Associative Object* المفعول معه

This noun is mentioned after the agent or object etc. of a verb with the *و* called *وار بمعنى مع* or *وار المعبة* *wāu* denoting association, to show the association of the former with the latter, and the latter is governed in the accusative; as *جَاءَ الْبُرْدُ وَالْجَلْبَابُ* the sheet came with the veil; *حَدَّثْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدٌ* I came with Zaid. When association is not meant, the *و* is merely a conjunction connecting both together, as *جِئْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدٌ* I and Zaid came.

### *Adverbial Complements*

These are—1st, *الحال* *circumstantial adverb*, and 2nd, *التمييز* *specifying adverb*.

#### *Circumstantial Adverb* الحال

It is that which expresses the state or condition of the agent or object of an action, while the action is taking place; as *جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا* Zaid came riding (a horse); *ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا مَشْدُودًا* I beat Zaid while he was tied. Sometimes it expresses the state or condition of both the agent and the object, as *كَلَّمْتُهُ رَاكِبَيْنِ* I talked with him while we were both riding.

It is necessary that it should always be an attributive noun, although sometimes a sentence, whether *verbal* or *nominal*, is

allowed to take its place ; as, <sup>جاءَ زَيْدٌ بَيْكِي</sup> Zaid came weeping ;  
<sup>جاءَ زَيْدٌ وَأَبُوهُ بَاكِ</sup> Zaid came while his father was weeping.

Here in the former sentence the verbal sentence <sup>بَيْكِي</sup> and in the latter the nominal one <sup>أَبُوهُ بَاكِ</sup> are used as <sup>الحال</sup>. In case of a nominal sentence being used as <sup>حال</sup> it is always preceded by a *wáu* (و) called <sup>واو حالیه</sup> (the *wáu* denoting circumstance), and a pronoun in it referring to the <sup>ذوالحال</sup> or noun whose condition is described ; as <sup>جاءَ زَيْدٌ وَهُوَ رَاكِبٌ</sup> Zaid came while he was riding ; <sup>جاءَ زَيْدٌ وَأَبْنُهُ بَاكِ</sup> Zaid came while his son was weeping. And sometimes only the *wáu* is allowable ; as <sup>خَرَجَ زَيْدٌ وَالْأَمِيرُ رَاكِبٌ</sup> Zaid came out while the Amir was riding. An aorist may also be used, as <sup>جاءَ زَيْدٌ بِسُرْعٍ</sup> without *wáu* but only with pronoun implied in the verb, as <sup>جاءَ زَيْدٌ بِسُرْعٍ</sup> Zaid came while hastening. Besides the above only with *wáu* or a pronoun may be used. When a preterite becomes a <sup>حال</sup> it is always prefixed with the particle <sup>قد</sup> ; as <sup>جاءَ زَيْدٌ وَقَدْ خَرَجَ الْأَمِيرُ</sup> Zaid came while the Amir came out. This <sup>قد</sup> is sometimes understood, as in the following passage from the Holy Korán <sup>جَاءُواكُمْ حَاجِرَاتٌ صُدُورُهُمْ</sup> they came to you while their hearts were narrow, i. e. <sup>قد حَجَرَتْ صُدُورُهُمْ</sup>.

### التمييز Specificative Adverb

This accusative is that which determines and limits the predicate, or specifies the cause of the relation of the predicate to its subject ; as <sup>طَابَ الْوَرْدُ لَوْنًا</sup> the rose is charming in respect of colour ; <sup>جَلَّ زَيْدٌ نَسَبًا</sup> he is higher in respect of rank ;

Zaid is exalted in respect of descent; **نَبَحَرَزَيْدٌ عَلِيًّا** Zaid became like a sea in respect of learning, i. e., he became a sea of learning.

A Tamiz (تميز) is sometimes governed by an absolute noun called by our grammarians **الاسم القام** (1), as **هَذَا خَاتَمٌ فَضَّةٌ** this is a ring made of silver. This is generally the case when that noun denotes measure, as **عِشْرُونَ دِرْهَمًا** twenty (in respect) of dirhams; **تَفِيرَانِ بُرٍّ** two bushels (in respect) of wheat.

### Active Participle مشبه بالفعل

The second of the analogous verbal governing powers is the active participle or the noun of agency (**اسم الفاعل**). Its agent is in the nominative (**رفع**). If it be derived from a transitive verb, it governs its object also in the accusative; as, **اِفَانَّمُ زَيْدٌ** is Zaid standing? and **اَلضَّارِبُ زَيْدٌ عَمْرًا** Zaid is beating Amr. It is often used as (**مضاف**) *muḏaf* to its object (**مفعول**), as **هُوَ ضَارِبُ زَيْدٍ** he is beater of Zaid; and sometimes, though rarely, to its agent, as **هُوَ قَائِمُ الْاَبِ** his father is standing.

### Passive Participle.

The passive participle or noun of object has its object in the nominative **رفع** just like the passive verb, as **اَلْمَضْرُوبُ زَيْدٌ** Zaid is between. But it is often used as (**مضاف**) *muzáf* to the agent of the action; as **هُوَ مَقْتُولُ زَيْدٍ** he is killed by Zaid, lit. he is *the killed* of Zaid.

---

<sup>1</sup> By an absolute noun is meant a noun ending in *tanween* or the *núns* of the dual and the regular plural, or a noun **مضاف** followed by a genitive.

*Simple Attributive Adjective.*

It governs its agent in the nominative ; as <sup>حَسَنٌ وَجْهٌ</sup> *his face* is handsome; and is often used as مضاف *muzáf* ; as <sup>حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ</sup> *as*.

*Infinitive.*

It has its agent in the nominative and governs its object in the accusative, when it ends in *tanween* ; as <sup>أَعْجَبَنِي ضَرْبُ زَيْدٍ عَمْرًا</sup> it pleased me that Zaid beat Amr. It is often used as مضاف *muzáf* to its agent, in which case it governs its object in the accusative, as <sup>أَعْجَبَنِي ضَرْبُ زَيْدٍ عَمْرًا</sup> Zaid's beating Amr pleased me ; <sup>أَعْجَبَنِي ضَرْبُ اللَّصِّ الْجَلَّادِ</sup> it pleased me that the executioner beat the thief.

*Noun which Governs another in the Genitive اسم المضاف*

A مضاف *muzáf* is an noun governing another in the genitive ; the former is called المضاف *the annexed*, and the latter المضاف اليه *that to which annexation is made*, and the relation subsisting between them is known as الاضافة *the annexation*.

When a noun governs another, its *tanween* or final *núnation* is suppressed, and if it be a dual number, or regular plural, the termination <sup>ين</sup> or <sup>ون</sup> is dropped from it, as <sup>كُتَابُ زَيْدٍ</sup> Zaid's book, <sup>كُتَابَا زَيْدٍ</sup> Zaid's two books <sup>مُسْلِمُو الْهِنْدِ</sup> the Muslims of India. It is also necessary that the definite article <sup>ال</sup> should be dropped from it, except when it is a participle, being *muzáf* to its agent or object, in which case the article is admissible, provided the following noun, *i.e.* the governed one, be with the article

prefixed to it, as الضارب الرجل the beater of the man ; or it be a pronoun, as الضاربُ his beater; or the participle be of the dual or plural number, as, الضاربان زيد the two beaters of Zaid, الضاربون زيد the beaters of Zaid. When a participle is مضاف *muzáf* to its agent or object, it is termed by our grammarians الإضافة اللفظية *the verbal annexation*, and others besides this are known by the name of الإضافة المعنوية *the logical annexation*. Any مضاف governing nouns of the latter class when followed by a defined noun is supposed to become a defined noun, while such is not the case with the former.

In the *logical annexation* ( الإضافة المعنوية ) the force of a preposition is implied—that of the preposition ل —when the following noun ( مضاف إليه ) signifies an object different in nature from that of the governing noun مضاف , as غلامٌ زيد Zaid's slave... غلامٌ لزيد ; of the preposition مِنْ , when the following noun is the matter of the thing implied by the governing noun, as خاتمٌ فضةٌ a ring of silver = خاتمٌ من فضة ; and of the preposition فِي when the following noun is ظرف *vessel* of the governing one ; as ضربٌ في اليوم beating of to-day = ضربُ اليوم .

#### الاسم التام *Perfector Complete Noun*

This is a noun terminating either in *tanween*, or what is considered as substitute for *tanween*, namely the *nún* of the dual or the plural number, or a noun followed by another in the genitive case. In all these cases, it governs another noun in



the accusative نصب as *tamiz*; as رَطْلٌ زَيْتًا a pound of oil; مَنْوَانِ سَمْنًا two *mans* of butter; عِشْرُونَ دِرْهَمًا twenty dirhams; خَاتَمُ زَيْدٍ ذَهَبًا Zaid's ring of gold (see p. 231.)

### THE PRESCRIPTIVE GOVERNING POWERS.

#### العوامل السماعية

These are divided into thirteen classes :

#### 1st Class.

There are thirteen verbs termed *الافعال الناقصة* *incomplete* verbs, and are so called, because they can not with an agent form a complete or perfect sentence. They precede a nominal sentence, the subject being in the nominative and the predicate in the accusative case. They are ظَلَّ - أَضْعَى - أَمْسَى - أَصْبَحَ - مَارَ - كَانَ. Of these the first *كان* which corresponds with the English verb *to be*, is used in two senses: 1st, incomplete ( *ناقصة* ), 2nd, complete ( *تامة* ). As an incomplete verb, it is used in affirming the existence of its attribute in its subject in time past, either in a sense capable of cessation, as *كان زيد قائماً* Zaid was standing, or in a sense incapable of cessation, as *كان الله حكيماً* God is wise. As a complete verb ( *تامة* ) it denotes existence absolutely, hence it forms a complete sentence with its nominating or agent alone, and does not require to be connected with a predicate, as *كان الماء* the water was, *i. e.*, it existed; *كان تاجرٌ وكان له ثلاثة أولاد* there was a merchant and he had three children. The 2nd is *مار* which has the force of the

English verb *to become* or *to turn out*, and denotes a change in the subject of the preposition, either from one *nature* or *substance* into another, as *صَارَ الطِّينُ خَرْفًا* : he clay became a pot, or from one quality to another, as *صَارَ الْفَقِيرُ غَنِيًّا* the poor man became rich. It is sometimes used as a complete verb denoting change from one place to another, and is then applied as an intransitive verb with a preposition ; as *صَارَ زَيْدٌ مِنْ بَلَدٍ إِلَى بَلَدٍ* Zaid went from one city to another.

The 3rd and 5th denote that the sense of the attribute existed in the subject at the times implied by their respective roots, namely, *أَصْبَحَ* morning, *أَمْسَى* evening, and *أَضْحَى* noon, as *أَصْبَحَ زَيْدٌ غَنِيًّا* Zaid was wealthy in the morning ; *أَمْسَى زَيْدٌ نَائِمًا* Zaid was asleep in the evening ; *زَيْدٌ قَارِئٌ* Zaid was a reader in the forenoon. These verbs are sometimes used in the sense of *he became* ; as *أَصْبَحَ الْفَقِيرُ غَنِيًّا* the poor man became rich. *أَصْبَحَ زَيْدٌ كَاتِبًا* Zaid became a writer ; *أَضْحَى الْمُظْلَمُ مُنِيرًا* the obscure became bright. They are sometimes used as *complete verbs*, denoting the fact of their agents entering upon the times implied by their roots ; as *أَصْبَحَ زَيْدٌ* Zaid entered upon the morning, *i. e.* the time morning was passing over him ; *أَمْسَى زَيْدٌ* Zaid entered upon the evening, *i. e.* the time evening was passing over him ; *أَضْحَى بَكْرٌ* Bakr entered upon the forenoon, *i. e.* the time was passing over him.

The 6th and 7th *عَلَّ* and *نَآت* also denote that the attribute of the sentence existed in its subject at the times implied by them ;

as **بَاتَ زَيْدٌ نَائِمًا** Zaid was a writer in the day ; **كَلَّمَ زَيْدٌ كَاتِبًا** Zaid was sleeping in the night. These two verbs are also sometimes used as synonymous with **صَارَ** *he became*; as **ظَلَّ الصَّبِيَّ بِالْبُلَا** the boy became adult ; **بَاتَ الشَّابُّ شَيْخًا** the youth became an old man.

The 8th, 9th, 10th and 11th, *i. e.* **زَالِ فَتَى** , **دَبْرَحَ** and **إِنْفَكَّ** preceded by negative particle **مَا** or **لَا** are used to indicate the uninterrupted duration or permanence of the attribute in the subject ; as **مَا بَرِحَ زَيْدٌ عَالِمًا** Zaid was always wise ; **مَا قَامَ زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا** Zaid was always standing ; **مَا زَالَ زَيْدٌ فَاضِلًا** Zaid was always excellent ; **مَا انفكَّ بَكْرٌ عَاقِلًا** Bakr was always intelligent.

The 12th **دَامَ** preceded by ( **مَاءَ الظَّرْفِيَّةِ** ) is used for the purpose of indicating a temporary relation between two events, the time or duration of the first of which it limits or restricts to the duration of the second. It must therefore necessarily be preceded by either a *verbal* or a *nominal* sentence ; as **زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ مَا دَامَ عَمْرٌو قَاعِدًا** sit while Zaid is sitting ; **زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ مَا دَامَ زَيْدٌ جَالِسًا** Zaid is standing so long as Amr is sitting.

The 13th **لَيْسَ** is used to give a negative signification to the sentence in the present time—or, according to some grammarians, in any time, whether past, present or future; as **لَيْسَ زَيْدٌ قَائِمًا** Zaid is not standing.

*Obs.* The following verbs may also be classed under the head of the *incomplete verbs*, being synonymous with **صَارَ** *viz.*, **نَحْوَرُ** . **عَدَا** - **رَاحَ** - **حَالَ** - **إِشْدَعَالَ** - **رَجَعَ** - **عَادَ** - **أَصَى** . Their government and that of all their derivative forms are the same as

that of the verb كان . The verb كَانَ followed by a preterite verb ( ماضي ) serves as an auxiliary to form the plu-perfect tense of the verb, as كَانَ زَيْدٌ ضَرَبَ عَمْرًا Zaid had beaten Amr ; and when followed by an aorist, it forms the past tense of the progressive form, as كَانَ زَيْدٌ يَضْرِبُ عَمْرًا Zaid was beating Amr.

## 2nd Class.

There are four verbs termed ( افعال المقاربة ) *verbs of proximity or approximate verbs*. They are so called on account of their significations. They are عَسَى it nearly happened ; كَادَ it nearly happened, or it was possible, كَرَبَ it was near ; and أَوْشَكَ it was possible. These verbs have in fact the force of the English adverb *perhaps*. These verbs precede a nominal sentence whose predicate is an aorist, with or without the particle أَنْ that ; as عَسَى زَيْدٌ أَنْ يَخْرُجَ perhaps Zaid may go out ; كَادَ زَيْدٌ يَجِيءُ ; كَرَبَ زَيْدٌ يَخْرُجُ it is possible that Zaid will come ; أَوْشَكَ زَيْدٌ يَخْرُجُ it is near that Zaid will come out.

Obs. The verb عَسَى is one of the افعال غير متصرفه indeclinable verbs, being conjugated only in the preterite.

Some grammarians add to the above-mentioned the following verbs جَعَلَ - طَفِقَ - أَخَذَ - but in my opinion, they, together with others, such as أَقْبَلَ - انْشَأَ - شَرَعَ - ظَلَّ etc., may be called *inceptive or inchoative verbs*, denoting the beginning of the action expressed by the following aorist, as جَعَلَ زَيْدٌ يَبْكِي Zaid began to weep, طَفِقَ الْقَوْمُ يَرُدُّهُمْ عَلَيْهِ the people began to crowd around him,

أَقْبَلَ يَلُومُهُ he began to blame him, ظَلَّ الْمَاءُ يَجْرِي the water began to flow.

### 3rd Class.

There are four verbs called *افعال المدح و الذم verbs of praise and censure* (vide p. 127). They are نَعِمَ - بئسَ - سَاءَ - جَبَدَا. Of these the first three نَعِمَ - بئسَ - سَاءَ have, for their nominative, a *generic noun*,<sup>1</sup> preceded by the article ال and followed by a noun, denoting the object of the praise or censure, called by our grammarians *المختص بالمدح او الذم*; as نَعِمَ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ Zaid is a good man; بئسَ الرجل بكر Bakr is a bad man, etc. Sometimes their agents may be *مضاف muzáf* to such *generic noun*, as نَعِمَ صَاحِبُ الْفَرَسِ زَيْدٌ Zaid is a good owner of the horse. جَبَدَا being composed of *حَبَّ it is good* and *ذَا that*, its agent is *ذَا* itself, after which comes the object of praise, as جَبَدَا زَيْدٌ Zaid is good.

In construction (*مختص بالمدح و الذم*) the noun denoting the object of praise or censure, e.g. زَيْد in the above example, may stand as *مبتدا the subject* of the preposition which is *مقدم i. e.* mentioned after its *خبر predicate*, and the verb with its subject, forming a *verbal sentence*, supplies the place of its *خبر predicate*. According to the construction, this will be reckoned as a *nouninal sentence*. There is, however, another construction applicable to it, which makes the noun denoting the object of praise and

---

<sup>1</sup> A *generic noun* (اسم الجنس) is a common noun expressive of a genus or a species; as رَجُلٌ man, فَرَسٌ horse, etc.

censure خبر *predicate* of an understood مبتدأ *subject* which is an isolated pronoun, هو *i.e.* نَعَمْ الرَّجُلُ هُوَ زَيْدٌ ; according to this latter construction, the preposition will be analysed into two sentences, of which the first نَعَمْ الرَّجُلُ is a verbal sentence, and the latter هُوَ زَيْدٌ a nominal sentence.

These verbs must agree with the nouns denoting the objects of praise and censure in number, gender and person; as نَعَمْ الرَّجُلُ زَيْدٌ and نَعِمَتِ الْمَرْأَةُ هِنْدٌ.

*Obs.* The two verbs, called فعلا التعجب *the verbs of admiration*, are مَا أَفْعَلُ followed by a noun in the accusative, and أَفْعَلُ followed by a noun governed in the genitive by the preposition ب ; as مَا أَحْسَنُ زَيْدًا how good is Zaid ; and أَحْسَنُ بَزِيدٍ how good is Zaid (*vide* page 127).

#### 4th Class.

There are seven verbs called أفعال القلوب *verbs of the mind*, *i. e.* they express actions that take place within the mind, and also أفعال الشك واليقين *verbs of doubt and uncertainty*. These verbs preceding a nominal sentence govern the subject and the predicate in the accusative. These are زَعَمَ - وَجَدَ - عَلِمَ - رَأَى - خَالَ - ظَنَّ - حَسِبَ . The first three of these denote doubt, the next three, certainty, and the seventh sometimes doubt and sometimes certainty; as ظَنَنْتُ عَمْرًا فَاضِلًا I imagined Amr excellent; خِلْتُ بَكْرًا قَاعِدًا I supposed Bakr was sitting; رَأَيْتُ عَمْرًا كَرِيمًا I perceived that Amr was generous; عَلِمْتُ زَيْدًا أَمِينًا I

knew Zaid was faithful; وَجَدْتُ الْبَيْتَ رَهِينًا I found the house was mortgaged; زَعَمْتُ اللَّهُ رَحِيمًا I believed that God was merciful; - زَعَمْتُ الشَّيْطَانَ شُكُورًا I doubted whether Satan was grateful.

*Obs.* In point of fact, these are verbs, doubly transitive, *i. e.* having two objective complements, neither of which can be omitted, they being subject and predicate of a nominal sentence.

Other verbs of this class have not this characteristic; they may have only one of the two objectives, as for instance, the verbs denoting gift, etc., as أَعْطَيْتُ زَيْدًا دِرْهَمًا I have Zaid a *dirham*, or, we may say أَعْطَيْتُ دِرْهَمًا I gave a *dirham*. The verb رَأَى is sometimes used to denote *perception* with the eye, and عَلِمَ is sometimes used as synonymos with عَرَفَ *he recognized*, and وَجَدَ with أَصَابَ *he got*, and then these verbs are not to be considered as افعال القلوب *verbs of the mind*, and consequently they may be confined to only one object; as, رَأَيْتُ الْقَمَرَ I saw the moon, وَجَدْتُ الضَّالَّةَ I discovered the lost, عَلِمْتُ زَيْدًا I recognised Zaid. In this case also they may have two accusatives, but the second accusative is not to be reckoned as the *second object*, but as a *circumstantial accusative*, as رَأَيْتُ الْقَمَرَ طَالِعًا I saw the moon rising, etc.

Besides these, there are many other verbs which may be reckoned under the head of افعال القلوب *verbs of the mind*, although the author of the *Miatâmil* does not mention them.

They are as follows:—

دَرَيْتُ *he knew*, عَدَّ *he calculated*, أَلْفَى *he found*, etc., as دَرَيْتُ

عَمْرًا عَاقِلًا I knew Amr to be a wise man, أَفَلَيْتَهُ ضَالًّا I found him misled, etc.

Besides *the verbs of the mind*, there is another class of verbs which are also doubly transitive ; they are termed افعال التصيير or افعال التحويل *verbs of conversion*. These are خَلَقَ - اتَّخَذَ - جَعَلَ - صَيَّرَ - مَيَّرَ الطِّينَ اِبْرِيْقًا I converted the clay into a pot, جَعَلْتُ الْبُرْدَ قَمِيصًا I made the sheet into a shirt, خَلَقَ اللهُ الْاِنْسَانَ هَلُوْمًا God created man as hasty, اِتَّخَذْتُ الْخَشَبَ بَابًا I made the wood into a door, تَرَكْتُهُ بَاعِثًا I left him perplexed.

#### 5th Class.

There are nine nouns called اسماء الافعال *nouns of verb*, because they have the signification of verbs. Six of these, بَلَّغَ - رَوَّيَ - دَوَّنَكَ - جَهَّلَ - عَلَّمَ - جَاهَلَ are used in the sense of the Imperative governing the following noun of the accusative. رَوَّيَ is synonymous with اَمْلَأْ leave or put off, as رَوَّيَ زَيْدًا leave Zaid ; بَلَّغَ with دَعْ give up or relinquish, as بَلَّغَ زَيْدًا give up Zaid ; دَوَّنَكَ with خَذَّ take or seize, as دَوَّنَكَ زَيْدًا seize Zaid, عَلَّمَ with اَلْزَمَ hold, as عَلَّمَ زَيْدًا hold Zaid ; جَاهَلَ with اِيْت came, as جَاهَلَ السَّوْرَ come to the feast ; جَاهَلَ with اِيْت lay hold of, as جَاهَلَ زَيْدًا lay hold of Zaid.

The other three are used as preterite governing a noun in the nominative. They are هَيَّأَتْ synonymus with بَعْدَ, as هَيَّأَتْ الشَّبَابَ the time of youth became off ; اِفْتَرَقَ with شَتَّانَ it was separated, as شَتَّانَ زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرٌ Zaid and Amr were separated ; and سَرَعَ with سَرَعَانَ he hastened ; as سَرَعَ زَيْدٌ Zaid hastened.



Besides the above-mentioned, there are several other nouns which are also of the class *اسماء الافعال nouns of verbs*, some of which are noted here, though other grammarians have omitted mentioning them. They are as follows :—

إِيَّاكَ synonymus with سَرَعَ, بَطَأَ with بطؤٌ *he delayed*, عَلَيَّ بِه bring him, آمِينَ *amen, be it so*, مَهْ and مَهْ *be silent*; اِيْه go on with your discourse, هَلُمَّ come, be present, or attend to, فَطْ or فَطْ think is sufficient, هَيْتْ لَكَ come on or attend to, هَاتِي هَاتِ give or bring (fem. sing. هَاتِي, fem. pl. هَاتِينَ, masc. dual هَاتِيَا and pl. هَاتُوا) - وَكَ - وَكَ - وَكَ - وَكَ I admire, أَفْ أَفْ أَفْ and أَفْ it pains me. The forms of the measure *فَعَال* are often derived from the primitive triliteral verbs having the sense of the Imperative; as نَرَالْ synonymus with انْزِلْ *alight*, نَرَاكْ with اَحْذَرْ *take care of*, أَتَرَكَ *leave off*.

#### 6th Class.

There are nine words which give *jazm* or the *quiescent* mark to the aorist. They possess a conditional or hypothetical signification like the particle لَنْ They are as follows :—

مَنْ who or whoever, مَا what or whichever, مَهْ whenever, أَيَّ whosoever, أَيُّمَا wherever, أَيُّ wheresoever, حَيْثُمَا whatever, إِذَا when, مَتَى when; as, مَنْ يَكْرِمُنِي أَكْرَمَهُ whoever will honour me, I will honour him; مَا تَصْنَعُ اصْنَعْ whatever thou shalt do, I shall do; مَهْ تَذْهَبُ اذْهَبْ wherever thou shalt go, I shall go; أَيُّ رَجُلٍ يَضْرِبُنِي أَضْرِبْهُ whosoever strikes me, I will strike

him ; أينما تمشي أَمْشِي wherever thou walkest, I will walk ;  
 أينما تكون أُنْجِي wherever thou shalt be, I will be ;  
 أينما تجلس أجلسْ whereever thou shalt sit, I will sit ;  
 اذْ مَا تَفْعَلْ أَفْعَلْ when thou shalt do it, I will do it.

Obs. Of these words, مَنْ - مَا - and أَيْ are used as relative pronouns (*vide* p. 131) ; and these along with مَتَى and أَيْنَ are also used in interrogation ; as مَنْ هَذَا الرَّجُلُ who is that man ?  
 مَا تَفْعَلْ what are you doing ? مَتَى تَسَافِرُ when wilt thou travel ?  
 أَيْ شَيْ هَذَا what is this ? In modern Arabic, أَيُّش the contraction of أَيْ شَيْ is used to signify "what ?" ; as أَيُّش اسْمُكَ what is your name.

### 7th Class.

There are four words which govern an undefined noun (اسم نكرة) in the accusative as *tamiz*.

(1) Of these the first is عَشْرَةٌ when compounded with أَحَدُ one, اِثْنَانِ two, ثَلَاثَةٌ three, أَرْبَعَةٌ four, خَمْسَةٌ five, سِتَّةٌ six, سَبْعَةٌ seven, ثَمَانِيَّةٌ eight or ثَمَانِيَّةٌ nine ; as اِحْدَ عَشْرَةَ رَجُلًا etc.

The same government is applicable to the numbers عَشْرُونَ twenty, ثَلَاثُونَ thirty, أَرْبَعُونَ forty, خَمْسُونَ fifty, سِتُّونَ sixty, سَبْعُونَ seventy, ثَمَانُونَ eighty, and تِسْعُونَ ninety, whether compounded with any other number or not ; but these are properly comprised in the *analogous governors* under the head of الاسم التام. When أَحَدٌ or اِثْنَانِ is compounded with عَشْرٌ both parts of the composite number will be in the masculine gender if the *tamiz* be in the

masculine; and in the feminine if it be in the feminine; as أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ رَجُلًا eleven men, and إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ امْرَأَةً eleven women. The other cardinal numbers (from ثَلَاثَةٌ three to تِسْعَةٌ nine, both inclusive), when compounded with عَشْرٌ ten, are used in the following manner: When the *tamiz* is in the masculine, the first part of the compounded number is used in the feminine and the other in the masculine; as ثَلَاثَةٌ عَشْرَ رَجُلًا thirteen men, أَرْبَعَةٌ عَشْرَ رَجُلًا fourteen men, and so on. But when the *tamiz* is in the feminine, the order is reversed, i.e. the first part will be masculine and the second feminine; as ثَلَاثٌ عَشْرَةُ امْرَأَةٍ thirteen women, أَرْبَعٌ عَشْرَةُ امْرَأَةٍ fourteen women, and so on. The cardinal numbers اِثْنَانِ, اِثْنَانِ etc. to تِسْعَةٍ when combined with عِشْرُونَ twenty, take the واو العطف cop. conj. (و) between the numbers; then if the first number be اِثْنَانِ or اِثْنَانِ it will be used in the masculine for a masculine *tamiz*, and in the feminine for a feminine *tamiz*; as اِثْنَانِ وَعِشْرُونَ رَجُلًا twenty-one men, اِثْنَانِ وَعِشْرُونَ امْرَأَةً twenty-one women.

Besides these, in other digits (ثَلَاثَةٌ three to تِسْعَةٌ nine, both inclusive) when joined to عِشْرُونَ or any other decade, the first member of the compound number, i.e. the digits, will be feminine when the *tamiz* is masculine, and masculine when the *tamiz* is feminine, as ثَلَاثَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ رَجُلًا twenty-three men and ثَلَاثٌ وَعِشْرُونَ امْرَأَةً twenty-three women.

Obs. The words مِائَةٌ hundred and أَلْفٌ thousand, and their duals and plurals, are used as *muzáf* to their *tamiz* which is then always in the singular number; as مِائَةٌ رَجُلٌ a hundred men

الف درهم a thousand *dirhams*, مائتا رجل two hundred men, مآت رجل many hundred men, آلاف درهم thousands of *dirhams*. The digits from ثلثة to تسعة inclusive, are used as *muzáf* to their *tamiz* which must be in the plural, as ثلثة رجال three men, ثلث نساء three women, and so on. The words واحد and اثنان have no *tamiz*, the signification being conveyed by using the noun in the singular or dual number, as رجل one man, رجلان two men. But sometimes they are used as adjectives to give force to the number of the things represented by the nouns ; as رجل واحد one man, رجلان اثنان two men.

(2) The second is the word كَمْ *how many*, when it is used interrogatively it governs the nouns following it in the accusative. as *tamiz* as كم درهما عندك how many *dirhams* are with you? But when it is used to indicate an affirmative, it governs the noun in the genitive, as كم رجل لقيته I saw many men.

(3) The third is كذا *so many*, which also governs the noun following it in the accusative, as كذا درهما عندي there are so many *dirhams* with me.

(4) The fourth is كَيْنَ *how many*, which has the same government as the preceding ; as كَيْنَ درهما عندك how many *dirhams* are with thee ?

Sometimes the particle مِنْ is used after the words كَمْ and كَيْنَ as كم مِنْ درهم عندك and كَيْنَ مِنْ درهم عندك how many of the *dirhams* are with thee ?

## 8th Class.

There are seventeen particles which govern the noun in the genitive ; they are called **حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ** Prepositions (see p. 198).

## 9th Class.

There are six particles which preceding a *nominal* sentence govern its subject in the accusative and its predicate in the nominative. They are the following :—**إِنَّ** *verily*, **أَنَّ** *verily* *that*, **كَأَنَّ** *as if*, **لَكِنَّ** *but*, **كَأَنَّهُ** *would to God*, **لَعَلَّ** *perhaps*; as **إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ** *verily Zaid is standing*, **رَأَيْتُ أَنَّ زَيْدًا مُنْطَلِقٌ** *I saw that verily Zaid is departing*, **كَأَنَّ زَيْدًا اسِدٌ** *as if Zaid is a lion*, **قَامَ زَيْدٌ لَكِنَّ عَمْرًا جَالِسٌ** *Zaid stood but Amr was sitting*, **لَيْتَ الشَّبَابُ عَائِدٌ** *would to God that youth would return*, **لَعَلَّ الْحَبِيبَ عَائِدٌ** *perhaps the friend is returning*.

*Obs.* The particles **إِنَّ** and **أَنَّ** are used to corroborate the sense of a given preposition. The first **إِنَّ** (moved with *kasrah*) is used in composition : firstly in the beginning of a sentence, as **إِنَّ زَيْدًا ذَاهِبٌ** *Zaid is certainly going*; secondly, it follows the tenses of **قَوْلٍ** *to say*, as **قِيلَ إِنَّ زَيْدًا قَائِمٌ** *it is said that certainly Zaid is standing*; thirdly, after the relative pronoun, as **جَاءَ الَّذِي إِنْ غَلَامَهُ هَارِبٌ** *he came whose boy is certainly running away*; fourthly, before a sentence whose predicate is preceded by the *emphatic lám*, **لَمْ يَكُنْ زَيْدٌ قَائِمٌ** *I knew that certainly Zaid is standing*. The second **إِنَّ** (moved with *fathah*) is often used in the middle of a sentence making the sentence which it precedes a part of the

major sentence, as *أَنَّ زَيْدًا رَاحِلٌ* it reached me that Zaid is departing ; here the sentence *أَنَّ زَيْدًا رَاحِلٌ* stands as nominative to *بَلَغَ* ; and so in the sentence *عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ بَكْرًا جَامِلٌ*, Here *جَامِلٌ* is objective of *عَلِمْتُ* (see p. 224).

*لَكِنَّ* is used for *استدراك* i.e. removing some uncertainty from the previous sentence, hence it only occurs between two sentences contrasted with one another in sense, as *غَابَ زَيْدٌ لَكِنَّ بَكْرًا حَاضِرٌ* Zaid is absent but Bakr is present. The fifth *لَيْتَ* denotes *تمني* wishing or supplication, and *لَعَلَّ* denotes *ترجي* hope or expectation.

#### 10th Class.

There are two negative particles, *ما* and *لا*, both of which precede a nominal sentence governing the subject in the nominative and the predicate in the accusative. Of these *ما* is used indifferently with a defined or an undefined noun, but *لا* only with undefined nouns, as *مَا زَيْدٌ فَاضِلٌ* Zaid is not an excellent man, *لا رَجُلٌ ظَرِيفٌ* no man is witty. When *إِلَّا* precedes the predicate, their government is destroyed, as *مَا زَيْدٌ إِلَّا فَاضِلٌ* Zaid is nothing but an excellent man. These two particles are called by our grammarians *ما ولا المشبهتان بليس* i.e. *ما* and *لا* resembling *ليس* because they resemble it in their government as well as signification.

When the particle *لا* precedes an *undefined noun* in order to have a universal negative signification, it is termed *الانفي الجنس* i.e. *لا* signifying *negation of the genus*, and in this case it gives

*fathah* without *tanween* to the subject ; as *لا رجل في الدار* there is no man in the house.

### 11th Class.

There are seven particles which give نصب *nasb* to a noun *i.e.* govern it in the accusative. 1st, the particle *و* synonymous with *مع* *with*. The noun governed by it is called *المفعول معه* (see p. 230); as *إِسْتَوَى الْمَاءُ وَالْخَشَبَةُ* the water was equal to the wood. 2nd, the particle *إِلَّا* *except*. It is called *حرف الاستثناء* *the particle of exception*, and the noun governed by it is termed by our grammarians *المستثنى*. This is in two ways. The first is termed *متصل* *homogeneous*, *i.e.* that in which *المتثنى* or the word following *the particle of exception* is of the same kind as the *المستثنى منه* or the word preceding the particle *إلا*; as *جاءني القوم إلا زيداً* the tribe came to me except Zaid. The second is termed *منقطع* and signifies that the *المستثنى* and *المستثنى منه* are dissimilar to each other in their nature; as *جاءني القوم حماراً* the people came to me except an ass.

*Obs.* The *مستثنى* or word following the particle *إلا* is rendered منصوب governed in the accusative in the following cases:—

1. In an assertive sentence, *i.e.* in a sentence neither prohibitive, negative nor interrogative, as *جاءني القوم إلا زيداً* the people came to me except Zaid.

2. When the *مستثنى* precedes the *مستثنى منه* as *جاءني القوم إلا مستثنى منه* the people came to me except Zaid.

3. When it is منقطع ; as جاءني القوم إلا حمراً the people came to me except an ass.

In other cases beside these, the مستثنى has by apposition (بدل) the same اعراب as the مستثنى منه though it may be governed optionally in the accusative when the مستثنى is mentioned in word, as ما جاءني القوم إلا زيداً the people did not come to me except Zaid, هل جاءني القوم إلا زيداً whether the people came to me except Zaid, لا تضرب أحداً إلا زيداً do not beat any one except Zaid.

There are several other words which are equally used in استثناء They are ليس, لا يكون, عدا, خلا, خاشا, سواء or سوى, غير They are مستثنى after the first three is invariably مجرور governed in the genitive ; and that after the next two, viz. خلا and عدا is منصوب and sometimes مجرور ; and that after لا يكون and ليس must be منصوب. The word سواء is itself always منصوب for its being ظرف. The word غير receives the same اعراب as the مستثنى which comes after إلا ; as ما جاءني أحدٌ غير زيدٍ etc.

The 3rd—يا O ; 4th—أيّ O ; 5th—هيا ho ; 6th—أيّ O ; and 7th أ O. These are called حروف النداء particles of Invocation (see p. 211) The nouns preceded by these particles are المنادى the vocative.

Obs. The منادى is governed sometimes in the accusative, sometimes in the nominative and sometimes in the genitive. It is governed in the accusative in the following instances :—

1st. When the منادى is مضاف regimen, as يا رسول الله O Apostle of God !



2nd. When the *منادى* is *مشبه بالمضاف* resembling the *muzáf*, i. e. a noun having an explanatory complement appended to it, as *يا راكباً ناقةً* O rider of a she-camel; *يا حسناً وجهه* O thou that art handsome in face; *يا خيراً من زيد* O thou that art better than Zaid !

3rd. When it is an undefined noun, and not certain to whom it is addressed, as when a blind man asks for help, as *يا رجلاً خذ يدي* O man (meaning any man), hold my hand.

The *منادى* is governed in the nominative, in the following cases :—

1st. When it is *مفرد* i. e. not *muzáf* or resembling *muzáf*, either defined or undefined, but certain as to the speaker, as *يا زيد* يا رجل. It is governed in the genitive when it is preceded by *لام الاستغاثة* the *lám* expressing cry for help; as *يا لزيد* O help Zaid. In crying for help, sometimes an *alif* is suffixed to the noun with a quiescent *h* at the end in pause; as *يا زيدا*.

*Obs.* When a noun preceded by the definite article *أل* becomes a *منادى* it is necessary that the word *أيتها* (fem. *أيتها*) or *هذا* should intervene between the *particle of invocation* and the *منادى* as *يا هذا الرجل - يا أيتها المرأة - يا أيتها الرجل* etc. Often the *particle of invocation* is omitted, as *زيد أيت* O Zaid come.

The pronominal suffix of the first person (*ى*) is generally rejected from the vocative, as *يا رب* O my Lord, for *يا ربى*. The words *أب* and *أم* admit of the peculiar forms *يا أب* and *يا أم* (moved with *fathah* or *kasrah*).

Likewise, sometimes the last letter or syllable of the vocative is rejected (which rejection is termed *الترخيم curtailing*) as *يَا مَالُ* for *يَا مَالِكَ*. In cases when the penultimate letter is a servile *infirm letter* preceded by a homogeneous vowel point, both the final letters are rejected, as *يَا عُمُ* for *يَا مَنصُورُ*, *يَا مَنصُورُ* for *يَا مَنصُورُ*. The vocative after the rejection of the final letters may retain the original vowel point of the present final letter, as in *يَا مَالِ* for *يَا مَالِكَ*, or it may receive the case-mark of the *مندى* as *يَا مَالٍ*. A noun in apposition to the vocative may be put either in the nominative or the accusative, like the adjectives qualifying a vocative; as *يَا اِبْرَاهِيمُ خَلِيلُ اللّٰهِ* O Abraham the friend of God; *يَا زَيْدُ الْعَاقِلُ* or *الْعَاقِلُ* O Zaid the intelligent. The particle *وَ* which is used to express sorrow or pain, and hence called *حرف الندبة the particle of lamentation*, follows the same rule, as *بَا* c. g. *وَ مُحَمَّدُ* *alas Muhammad!* *وَ عَبْدُ اللّٰهِ* *alas Abdullah!* More generally, however, the termination *اِ*—in pause *اِة*, is added, which changes the final vowel into *fathah*; as *وَ زَيْدَا* or *وَ زَيْدَاة* *alas Zaid!* When the noun is *مضاف muzáf*, this termination is annexed to the *مضاف اليه* the genitive; as *وَ امير المؤمنين* *alas for the commander of the faithful!*

### 12th Class.

This class contains four particles which give *nasb* to the final letter of the aorist. They are *اِنَّ* or *لَيَّ*, *كَيَّ* or *لَيَّ*, *لَنْ* or *اَنْ*, (see p. 211).

*Obs.* The particle <sup>أَنْ</sup> that prefixed to the aorist restricts it to future sense, as <sup>أَرْجُو أَنْ تَقُومَ</sup> I hope that thou wilt rise; and when it is prefixed to the preterite, it converts the verb to the sense of an infinitive, and then it is called <sup>أَنْ</sup> المصدرية, as <sup>أَعْجَبَنِي أَنْ خَرَجْتَ</sup>. Here <sup>أَنْ خَرَجْتَ</sup> = <sup>خَرُوجُكَ</sup>. The particle <sup>لَنْ</sup> also restricts the sense of the aorist to future in a confirmed negative sense; as <sup>لَنْ يَقُومَ</sup> he will never stand up. The particle <sup>كَيِّ</sup> or <sup>لَكَيِّ</sup> denotes that what precedes it is the cause of what follows it, as <sup>أَسْلَمْتُ كَيِّ أَدْخَلَ الْجَنَّةَ</sup> I embraced Islām that I might enter Paradise. The particle <sup>إِذَنْ</sup> is used in the sense of answer and consequence, and restricts the verb to a future sense; as <sup>إِذَنْ تَدْخُلُ الْجَنَّةَ</sup> now thou wilt enter Paradise, in answer to him who says <sup>أَسْلَمْتُ</sup>.

But when it refers to present time it does not give *nashb* to the aorist, as <sup>إِذَنْ أَظُنُّكَ صَادِقًا</sup> well, I think you speak the truth. <sup>أَنْ</sup> is held to be implied after <sup>حَتَّى</sup> ل (called <sup>لَا مُمْ كَيِّ</sup>), (entitled <sup>لِ</sup> <sup>لَا مُمُ الْجَعْدُ</sup> *i. e.* confirming denial), <sup>أَوْ</sup> synonymous with <sup>أَنْ</sup> <sup>إِلَى أَنْ</sup> until that; after <sup>فَ</sup> prefixed to a clause expressing result or effect of a preceding one, and containing an imperative, <sup>تَمْنِي</sup> wish, hope, or interrogation; and after <sup>وَ</sup> when the following verb expresses an act subordinate to, but simultaneous with, the act expressed by the previous clause, *e. g.* <sup>يَضْرِبُهُ حَتَّى يَمُوتَ</sup> beat him till he dies, <sup>قَامَ لِيَذْهَبَ</sup> he got up in order to go, <sup>مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ لِيُعَذِّبَهُمْ</sup> God is not willing to punish them, <sup>لَأَضْرِبَنَّكَ</sup> I must beat thee till thou repent, <sup>فَاكْرَمْنِي</sup> see me

that I may honour thee, لَا تَأْكُلِ السَّمَكَ وَتَشْرَبِ اللَّبَنَ do not eat fish and drink milk (at the same time).

### 13th Class.

In this class are five particles which, being prefixed to the aorist, give to its final letter *jazm*, or make it quiescent. They are <sup>اِنَّ</sup> and <sup>اِنَّ</sup> لامِ النّهي - لامِ الامر - <sup>لَمَّا</sup> - <sup>لَمْ</sup> (see p. 54).

*Obs.* The sign of *jazm* in the masc. and fem. 3rd person sing., in the masc. sing. 2nd person, and in the 1st person sing. and plural is سكون or quiescence ; and in the dual and plural of the masc. 3rd and 2nd persons, in the fem. sing. 2nd person, and in the dual of the fem. 3rd and 2nd persons, the rejection of the <sup>نون</sup> الاعراب : and in the defective verbs (ناقص), the dropping of the final infirm letter ; as <sup>لَمْ يَضْرِبْ</sup> - <sup>لَمْ يَدْعُوْا</sup> <sup>لَمْ يَخْشَ</sup> and <sup>لَمْ يَرْمِ</sup> - <sup>لَمْ يَدْعُ</sup> and <sup>لَمْ تَضْرِبْ</sup> - <sup>لَمْ يَضْرِبُوْا</sup> - <sup>لَمْ يَضْرِبَا</sup> etc. The particle <sup>اِنَّ</sup> is used before a proposition composed of two sentences, the first of which must be a verbal one and the second either verbal or nominal; the first contains in a condition and is termed <sup>الشرط</sup> *protasis*, and the other the consequence, and is called <sup>الجزاء</sup> *apodosis* (see p. 225). If there be an aorist in both the sentences, or in the former, it must be marked with *jazm*; as <sup>اِنْ تَضْرِبْ ضَرْبَتٌ</sup> or <sup>اِنْ تَضْرِبْ اَضْرَبْ</sup> if you will strike, I will strike <sup>اِنْ تَضْرِبْ قَوِيْدٌ ضَارِبٌ</sup> if you will strike, Zaid will be striking.

But if the aorist be in the latter, *i.e.*, the one which contains

the consequence, it may or may not be marked with *jazm*, as  
 اِنْ ضَرَبْتُ اَضْرِبْ - اَضْرِبْ if you strike, I will strike.

### *The Appositives التوابع*

The complements which are co-ordinate with, or in apposition to, the governed nouns, are called by our grammarians *التوابع* followers, or *appositives*, and the word to which they are placed in apposition, is called *المتبوع* *that which is followed* (by some word in apposition). These are five: *الصفة* *the adjective*, *التأكيد* *corroboration*, *البدل* *substitution or permutation*, *العطف بالحروف* *nouns connected by conjunctions*, and *عطف البيان* *explantary apposition*. In Arabic, the adjective comes after the substantive and agrees with it in number, gender, case and definition (تعريف) or non-definition (تذكير) ; as هذا رجلٌ عالمٌ this is a learned man, جاء زيدٌ الفاضلُ Zaid the excellent came, هذه امرأةٌ عالمةٌ this is a learned woman, ذهب المسلمون الصابرونُ the patient Muslims went, هم رجالٌ صلحاءُ they are good men, اخذت كنوزاً كثيرةً I took many treasures, هن نساءٌ صالحاتٌ they are good women.

Sometimes a substantive has an adjective, expressive of a quality which does not exist in the *موصوف* qualified, but in a person or thing connected with it. This is called *الصفة بحال متعلق* *as اخوة* *الموصوف*, جاءني رجلٌ حسنٌ اخوة there came to me a man whose brother is handsome. In this case, the adjective belongs to the following noun as its predicate, the noun being the subject, and the two together form a *صفة* or qualificative clause of the preceding substantive with which the adjective agrees only in case, but not

in number and gender, as *جاءني رجلٌ حسنٌ زوجته* there came to me a man whose wife is handsome, *رأيت امرأتين حسنًا ابوهما* I saw two women whose father is handsome. *هذا رجلٌ شجاعٌ اخوانه* this is a man whose brothers are brave.

*Obs.* Sometimes a sentence, whether verbal or nominal, may stand in the place of an adjective, but only an undefined noun may be qualified by such an attributive sentence ; as *هذا رجلٌ رأيت رجلاً ابوه عالمٌ يعلم الصرف* this is a man who knows etymology, I saw a man whose father is learned. It is necessary that every attributive or relative sentence should have a pronoun either expressed or implied in the verb referring to the qualified noun.

#### *The Corroboration التأكيد*

This is of two kinds : one is designated *التأكيد اللفظي* the verbal corroboration, which consists in the emphatic repetition of the word itself, as *جاء زيدٌ زيدٌ* Zaid himself came ; and the other is called *التأكيد المعنوي* the corroboration in meaning ; this is effected by connecting with the words *كل عين , نفس* *whole, self*, *اجمع جميع* *total*, *اجمعون* *fem. جمعاء* *all*, *كلا* *both*, and the like, as *رأيتُ زيداً عينه* I saw Zaid himself, *جاءني زيدٌ نفسه* Zaid himself came to me, *جاء القوم كلُّهم* the whole tribe came, *قام القوم جميعهم* all the people stood, *اكلت الخبز كله* I ate the whole bread.

#### *The Permutation البدل*

This is of four kinds : 1st, *بدل الكل من الكل* the substitution of the whole for the whole, as *جاء زيدٌ عمك* ; 2nd, *بدل البعض من الكل* the

*substitution of a part for the whole*, as ضَرَبْتُ زَيْدًا رَأْسَهُ I struck Zaid, i. e. his head, أَكَلْتُ الْخُبْزَ نِصْفَهُ I ate the bread, i. e. half of it ; 3rd, اِشْتَمَلْتُ بِدَلِّ الْاِشْتِمَالِ *comprehensive substitution*, i. e. the permutative, which indicates a quality or thing which the متبوع the preceding noun comprehends or possesses ; as سَلَبَ زَيْدٌ ثَوْبَهُ Zaid has been robbed, i. e. of his clothes ; اَعْجَبَنِي زَيْدٌ عِلْمَهُ Zaid pleased me, i. e. his knowledge ; 4th, اِشْتَمَلْتُ بِدَلِّ الْاِشْتِمَالِ *the permutative of error*—it is that in which the متبوع being uttered merely by mistake, the correct word is immediately substituted for it, as when one says رَأَيْتُ فَرَسًا حَمَارًا I saw a horse (I mean to say), an ass.

### *The Connexion by Conjunctions. العطف بالحروف*

It is also called عطف النسق *connection of sequence*, which takes place by means of connective particles or conjunctions (see conj. p. 208) ; as زَيْدٌ وَعَمْرٌو جَاءَا Jaid and Amr came, هَذَا اِنْسَانٌ اَوْ حِمَارٌ is this a man or an ass ?

### *Explicative Apposition عطف البيان*

This is the connection of a noun to a preceding one which it explains or defines more closely, as قَامَ أَبُو حَقِيصٍ عُمَرُ Abu Hafs 'Umar stood.

### *Pronouns.*

- In Arabic, as in English and other languages, the pronoun agrees with its antecedent in number and gender. There is a sort of impersonal pronoun which is sometimes used in the

beginning of a sentence, and which is called by our grammarians *ضمير الشأن* *pronoun of circumstanae*, when it is masculine, and *ضمير القصة* *pronoun of the story*, when feminine ; as *هُوَ اللّٰهُ أَحَدٌ* (it is the case that) God is one ; *هِيَ هِنْدٌ قَائِمَةٌ* (it is the story that) Hind is standing.

It is often used with *أَنَّ* as *أَنَّ زَيْدًا* verily (it is the case that) Zaid came. When an affixed pronoun *الضمير المتصل* is *معطوف* *connected* with a substantive, it is necessary that a *ضمير منفصل* *isolated pronoun* should also be mentioned, as *جِئْتُ أَنَا وَزَيْدٌ* I and Zaid came, *ضَرَبْتَ أَنْتَ وَاخْوَك* thou and thy brother struck. Sometimes a redundant pronoun intervenes between the subject and the predicate of a nominal sentence when both are defined nouns, and it is called *ضمير الفصل* *pronoun of separation*, as *زَيْدٌ هُوَ الْعَاقِلُ* Zaid is a wise man. A demonstrative pronoun sometimes stands in composition as *موصوف* and the following noun, which must be a defined one, is reckoned as its *مفهُ*, as *هَذَا الرَّجُلُ* *this man* ; and sometimes it is *مبتدأ* and the following noun, its *خبر*, as *هَذَا رَجُلٌ* *this is a man*.

A relative pronoun *اسم الموصول* is always followed by a pronoun referring to *الموصول*, as *جَاءَ الَّذِي أَبُوهُ كَاتِبٌ* there came he whose father is a writer, *قَامَ الَّذِي ضَرَبْتَهُ لَيْلًا* that man stood whom you beat at night.

The pronoun above alluded to, may be optionally omitted from a *صلة* relative sentence when it is in the accusative ; as



قام الذي ضربته or قام الذي ضربتُ there stood the man whom I beat.

*Obs.* In Arabic there is no relative pronoun which can be employed when the antecedent is an undefined noun ; in such case a relative sentence, which becomes a صفة qualification to that indefinite noun, is used, as كتب رجلٌ قام ليلاً a man wrote who stood at night .

## SUPPLEMENT

### *The Tenses*

The forms expressive of tenses in the Arabic are only two : the **preterite** (ماضي), and the **ao rist** (مضارع).

The Arabic preterite is equivalent to the English past tense ; as **جاء زيد** Zaid came. The same form indicates also the perfect tense of English ; as **كتب زيد هذا الكتاب** Zaid has written this book. The pluperfect tense is formed by prefixing the preterite of the verb **كان** *to be* to the preterite of the principal verb, as **كان زيد كتب** Zaid had written. When the particle **قد** is prefixed to the preterite, it implies that something expected has been realized, as **قد رجع زيد من سفره** Zaid has verily returned from his journey ; or that the act is really finished and completed just at the moment of speaking or a little before it, as **قد ركب زيد** Zaid has just ridden.

In the conditional, optative, benedictive or maledictive sentences, the preterite bears the sense of futurity, as **ان ضربتني ضربتك** if thou shalt beat me I shall beat thee ; **اطال الله عمرك** may God lengthen thy life ; **فانلك الله** may God destroy thee.

When the particle **لو**, expressive of a supposition, is followed by two correlative sentences, each having its verb in the preterite tense, the first of such preterites is to be rendered in

English by the pluperfect of the Indicative, the second to which the particle <sup>ل</sup> is prefixed, by the preterite of the Subjunctive; as <sup>ل</sup>وَعَلِمْتُ هَذَا لَضَرْبِكَ had I known this, verily I should have beaten thee.

The aorist (مضارع) is common to the present and future, hence the term *aorist* is more appropriate than the term *future*, which has so erroneously been adopted by some Anglo-Arabic grammarians.

The particles <sup>س</sup> and <sup>سوف</sup> prefixed to an aorist, as well as the emphatic <sup>ل</sup> along with a paragogical *nūn* <sup>ن</sup> or <sup>ن</sup>, and the emphatical negative <sup>لن</sup>, restrict the aorist to futurity; as <sup>س</sup>سيضرب he shall strike (very soon); <sup>سوف</sup>يضرِب he shall strike (at a remote future time); <sup>ليضربن</sup> or <sup>ليضربن</sup> verily he shall strike; <sup>لن</sup>يضرِب certainly he shall never strike.

When the particle <sup>لم</sup> or <sup>لما</sup> is prefixed to an aorist, it renders it to the sense of a negative preterite or past tense, as <sup>لم</sup>يضرِب = <sup>ما</sup>ضرب he did not strike (*vide* pages 53 and 206).

### The Moods.

The Indicative mood in the Arabic is expressed by the simple form of the preterite and the aorist. The Imperative has a separate form. The Potential mood is expressed sometimes without an auxiliary by the simple form of the aorist; as <sup>لا</sup>أَحْصِي مَنَاقِبَكَ I cannot count up thy qualities. Sometimes the aorist of the verbs <sup>قَدَر</sup>, <sup>اسْتَطَاعَ</sup>, <sup>أَمَكَّنَ</sup> etc. (which indicate power and

possibility) or the word لا يَدُّ are used as auxiliary before the aorist of the principal verb (with or without اِنْ) ; as

لا يَقْدِرُ اِنْ يَمْشِي } he cannot walk ;  
 لا يَقْدِرُ يَمْشِي }  
 لا يَدُّ اِنْ يَمْشِي he must walk.

Sometimes the Infinitive of the principal verb is used after such verbs preceded by the preposition عَلَى ; as هو لا يَقْدِرُ عَلَى الْمَشْيِ he cannot walk (lit. he has no power upon walking). And sometimes the Infinitive is governed as accusative of the aorist of such verbs ; as هُوَ لَا يَسْتَطِيعُ الْمَشْيَ he cannot walk (lit. he cannot do walking).

The verbs عَسَى , كَادَ , etc., which are termed verbs of *proximity* (see p. 238), have sometimes the force of the Potential mood ; as عَسَى زَيْدٌ اَنْ يَضْرِبَ عَمْرًا Zaid very likely may beat Amr ; كَادَ زَيْدٌ يَمْشِي Zaid is about to walk.

The Subjunctive mood may be expressed either by a conditional particle which gives *jazm* to the final letter of the aorist but not to that of the preterite ; as اِنْ تَضْرِبَ زَيْدًا اضْرِبْتُكَ if thou beat Zaid, I shall beat thee ; اِنْ ضَرَبْتَ زَيْدًا اضْرِبْتُكَ if thou shalt beat Zaid, I shall beat thee (*vide* p. 225) ; or without it, having a conditional sense implied in the correlative sentences ; as كُنَّا قَنَعًا تَكُنْ مَلِكًا live contented and you will be a king.

Professor W. Wright divides the moods in Arabic into five, namely, Indicative, Subjunctive, *Jussive* or Conditional, Imperative, and *Energetic*. This idea of Subjunctive is some-

what corresponding to that of the Latin. The aorist following ل, كي or, لكي etc., is called by him Subjunctive mood, and that following الامر لام or لام النهي etc., *Jussive* mood. And the *Energetic* mood is expressed by لام التاكيد or ل or نون التاكيد or ن or ن etc.

In order to make it easily intelligible to the native students, in explaining the moods, I have tried to make it correspond with the English moods.

---

